

CHAPTER I.

THE GEOGRAPHY OF THE NEGRO IN AFRICA AND IN THE NEW WORLD

The Meaning of the tropics: - Temperature and "hotness" - Climate types in Africa - The African Plateau - Harbors - The New World

THE GEOGRAPHY OF THE NEGRO IN AFRICA AND THE NEW WORLD

With the exception of fifteen million Negroes in South Africa and thirteen million in the United States, the Tropics are the home of Negro people. By "Tropics" we mean the land and sea space between two imaginary lines drawn around the World. The Tropic of Cancer is a line drawn around the world at a distance of 23.45 degrees North of the Equator. The Equator is the imaginary line drawn around the world at its ~~exact center and~~ largest circumference. The Tropic of Capricorn is a line drawn around the world at a distance of 23.45 degrees South of the Equator. ~~Since the distance from the Equator to the Tropic of Cancer is 23.45 degrees, and to the Tropic of Capricorn is 23.45 degrees, these two "tropics" or lines of latitude mean that~~ exact middle of the world

The main facts of Geography which make the Tropics different from other regions are Climate and Vegetation. To understand the climate of the tropical regions in which Negro people live, we need to know ~~certain facts~~ ^{temperature} about the ~~weather~~, the rainfall, the prevailing winds, the average cloudiness, and other facts.

The best known fact about the Tropical Regions is that they are hot. ~~With~~ If we say that there are 2 hundred million Negroes in the world, 172 million, or ~~at~~ 86 percent, live in regions where the average daily temperature in the month of January is 70 degrees or above. One hundred and seventy million, or 85 percent, live in regions where the average daily temperature in July is 70 degrees or above.

Remembering that the seasons are reversed ~~in~~ South of the Equator as compared to North of the Equator - for example, January in Georgia is mid-winter, but ~~in~~ South Africa it is mid-summer - we can make comparisons between temperature of different lands in which Negroes live. ~~Just~~ In Southern Florida in mid-winter the temperature varies from 60 to 70 degrees. This is the same degree of "hotness" one might find in the same month at Dakar on the West Coast of Africa ~~or at~~ in the Northern Sudan in the East of Africa. Negroes of New Orleans, or Baton Rouge, Louisiana, or Galveston, Texas, or Thomasville, Georgia, live in mid-winter under the same temperature conditions as the Negroes in Johannesburg, South Africa, or Benguela or Loanda in Portuguese Angola. The Georgia Negro has his winter, of course, in January, at the time the South African is having his summer.

The Negro in Cuba or Haiti or in Trinidad lives under temperature conditions very similar to those to be found in Sierra Leone, Liberia, the Sudan, and Abyssinia in Africa. In January and in July most of the Negro people of Brazil live in temperatures very similar to those in Nigeria, the Congo, and South East Africa.

In addition to temperature, we know that our feeling of "hotness" is affected by other factors, such as winds and rains, and by altitude. One great geographical fact about Africa is that in its center is a great plateau; and that on the East Coast this plateau runs from North to South almost from Egypt to the tip of the Continent in South Africa. The great plateau regions are as much as five thousand feet above sea level; and weather students generally agree that at least one degree of temperature ~~falls~~ ^{falls} as we go up each thousand feet. The African plateau, therefore, although in the Tropics and even on the Equator, are not as hot as ~~they seem to be~~ it might seem they would be.

With whatever advantage the plateau gives to Africa's temperature, the outstanding fact about it is that it is a hot country; and the same might be said of Brazil and of the West Indian Islands where the majority of Negroes in the new World live.

With the exception of eleven million Negroes in the United States and about three million in South Africa, most Negroes - 93 percent - live in regions where snow never falls except as a never-to-be-forgotten rarity. Exceptions are to be found almost on the Equator in Africa, where Mount Kilimanjaro is snow-covered at a height of nearly twenty thousand feet above sea-level.

there is a fall of regions

Wind direction is an important part of the "weather". The Earth receives more heat at the Equator than anywhere else. We know that air rises when it is heated. The tropics therefore are regions of ~~low pressure~~ "low pressure" where because of the heat and because, also, of the rotation (spinning) of the Earth, winds from are heated and pushed upward and outward. South of the Equator these winds usually blow toward the ~~Northwest~~ ^{North}; north of the Equator they blow toward the ~~Southwest~~ ^{South}; Northeast; south of the Equator they come from the Southeast. These prevailing ~~winds~~ "trade winds" are so-called because sailors have long used them in the days of sailing boats to direct the movement of sailing ships engaged in trade upon the high seas.

In the West Indies in January the trade winds blow from off the Northeastern shore during January ~~the winds blow~~ ^{they blow} During the same season from off the coast of Northwest Africa and toward the coast of Brazil. On the other side of the Equator Brazil receives the Southeast trade winds, as ~~do also~~ ^{do} the Gold Coast, Nigeria, the Congo, and French Equatorial Africa.

Tropical countries differ from temperate zones in the fact that the rain may come altogether in one season of the year. In the stretch of Africa reaching from the West Coast - Liberia, Sierra Leone - to Abyssinia, the rainy season comes from May to September. In Western Brazil and South-Central Africa the rainy season comes from December to March. In areas like the Gulf of Guinea in Africa, at the mouth of the Niger River, and the mouth of the Amazon river in South America, ~~the rainy season lasts~~ every season seems to be a "rainy" season. The West Indies and Central West Africa in general are areas of heavy rainfall.

The great desert areas in Africa are the Sahara, running almost entirely across the Continent from West to East; the "Horn of Africa", pointing toward the tip of Arabia across the ~~Sudan~~ mouth to the Red Sea; and the Kalahari desert in Southeast Africa. These great desert areas have been considerable historical factors in the development of Africa. They have acted as barriers to contact and civilizing influences.

In Africa alone ~~there are~~ there are four principal types of climate. These are (I) Equatorial climates, (II) Tropical climates ~~of the Sudan type~~, (III) Tropical climates of the "hot desert" type, and (IV) Sub-tropical climates.

~~All of the lands close to the Equator in Africa, with the exception of the "Horn of Africa" in the East, show constant heat, rainfall distributed~~

There are three ~~different~~ different kinds of climate within the Equatorial regions. In Central Africa and the Congo basin one may expect constant heat, rainfall distributed throughout the year, and high humidity. Under these conditions ~~the~~ heavy tropical forests ~~grow~~ are found where this type of climate prevails. On the Guinea Coast and the interior behind it, there is constant heat with heavy summer rains and high humidity throughout the year. Usually there is a short period during the year of low rainfall or of no rain at all. As in the Congo, heavy forests and jungles prevail. In the third Equatorial climate region, such as that part of ~~the East African~~ the East African highlands along the Equator, there are moderately high day temperatures through the year, with very cool nights. Rainfall in the highlands is ~~is~~ moderate and well distributed throughout the year.

There are two types of the tropical climate. The "Sudan Type" shows a very high temperature throughout the year with the highest average levels reached in May. Although the temperature may fall thereafter, the high humidity makes the weather even more uncomfortable. From ^{October} ~~October~~ to March a ~~steady~~ steady wind, the Harmattan, blows from the Northeast. It is a hot wind and carries fine particles of sand to the discomfort of the people of the Sudan. In the summer the south west trade winds blow in from the Guinea Coast to bring rain to the Sudan, decreasing as the Sahara is reached. Abyssinia is in this same area, but is an exception because the country is located on a great plateau with an average height of 6000 ^{also} feet above sea level.

The ~~second kind of~~ tropical climate is ~~the~~ ^{also} found in the Southern part of the Congo Basin and from southern parts of Tanganyika Territory southward to the Tropic of Capricorn, excluding Bechuanaland and South West Africa which are desert or desert-like. Temperatures are high but not excessively so. The hottest month seldom shows an average higher than 82 degrees, while the ~~winter~~ "coldest" winter ~~month~~ temperature rarely falls below 60 degrees.

Sudan

In this area winter - which comes in the months from June to August - is a very pleasant season, with daily sunshine and low humidity. The rainy season comes in the months from December to April. The interior portion of Angola has a climate like that of the Sudan, while the highlands in the South of Nyasaland have a climate much cooler than the average. In The Zambesi River valley and along the coast of Portuguese East Africa temperatures are higher and malaria flourishes.

The "Hot Desert Type" of tropical climate finds its best example in the Sahara desert. This waste land extends from the Atlantic Coast to the Red Sea and averages 800 miles from North to South. The Sahara ~~desert~~ has registered some of the highest temperatures of the World, the afternoon ^{summer} temperature frequently going above 120 degrees. In December and January the average is below 60 degrees. The temperature ranges widely ~~today~~, ~~the~~ and it is not unusual for the nights to be fifty degrees cooler than the days. In mid-winter night frosts are not unusual. There is practically no rain. Libya is a part of the Sahara desert; and Egypt is in fact also a desert, although the great crop production of the Nile Valley sometimes hides this fact. The average annual rainfall at Cairo is only 2 inches. The fertility of the Nile Valley, of course, is due to irrigation from the river itself.

Northwest Africa and the Cape Province of South Africa fall into the "sub-tropical" climate belts. The northern climate has as its principal features a dry season from June through August, and much winter rainfall; very hot summers and winters mild. ~~the~~ In the South the July - Winter - average is 55 degrees, the summer - January - average 70 degrees. The Cape Province has an almost ideal climate, cooled by off-shore breezes rising from cold ocean currents.

Feet African Plateau One of the most striking geographical facts about Africa is that it is almost entirely a great Plateau - a great high ~~series~~ series of shelf with very ~~little~~ few lowlands or plains. ~~The plateau arises only a few miles inland.~~ Almost the entire area from the Red Sea to South and Southwest Africa is a great Plateau over three thousand ~~miles~~ high. The presence of this Plateau relieves the hot climates and provides ~~much~~ large areas where there is not too great a difference between European and American weather conditions.

* Harbors If one looks at a map of Africa he will ~~not~~ notice that he sees no jagged bays or gulfs such as may be seen in the shores of other continents. The shore line is straight, and there are few "natural" harbors. There are stretches of more than a thousand miles without a harbor. This means that ships coming to unload ~~in~~ along the African coast have had no protection and no ~~space~~ space for anchoring protected by headlands or peninsulas. With the resources of modern engineering, artificial break-waters are being built at many places in Africa; but much of the backwardness of the Continent has been due to this difficulty. The harbor at Dakar is one of the finest natural harbors in Africa, and it has been greatly improved. After leaving the nearby English port of ~~Sierra Leone~~ Freetown in Sierra Leone, one must go a thousand miles along the West African coast to find a harbor; way stations wishing to load or unload freight must do so by the ~~most~~ unsafe and expensive means of using lighters and small boats.

The weather in
The New World What has been said of Africa might also be said of those areas of the New World World where the Negro lives, with the exception of the United States. As a matter of fact July temperatures in Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, and Louisiana are much like those of Guyana, Trinidad, French West Africa, Uganda, and Kenya Colony. January temperatures in the same states are much cooler than any found in Africa, with the exception that the Gulf Coast in the United States is very similar in its weather conditions to the Mediterranean coast of Africa.

The Islands of the Caribbean - Jamaica, San Domingo, Cuba, and others - are visited by strong trade winds which give ample rainfall, but also greatly relieve the effect of heat. The drainage basin of the Amazon River in Brazil shows many of the features of the Equatorial Congo in Africa; but this section is sparsely inhabited by people of any race, save Indians. A great plateau region in Central and Southern Brazil, added to the South East Trades, give it a climate much like that of the Eastern

CHAPTER II.

RACIAL AND CULTURAL AREAS IN AFRICA

Importance of understanding peculiar habits of other people - Meaning of "Culture" - The Ashantee wars as an example of cultural misunderstanding - The Meaning of "Negro" in American usage and elsewhere - Racial types in Africa - The Hamitic Peoples - The Negro Peoples - The Bantu Peoples - African Languages

RACIAL, CULTURAL, AND POLITICAL AREAS IN AFRICA

Importance of understanding peculiar habits of other people-Meaning of "Culture"-
African Types today-African types in the ancient world-African types in the
last four hundred years-Migrations-languages-cultural areas and their definition

In thinking of the African, or of black people, we are likely to think in terms of a solid mass of folk all of whom are alike, and who have everywhere the same modes of life, the same customs, the same manners, and the same appearance. This is a habit, indeed, that we are likely to have in thinking of any people grouped together under one name. For example, it is probable that each of us has in mind a mental picture of a certain kind of person - in habits and appearance - whenever we hear or read the word "Mexican", or "Chinese", or "Russian", or "Cuban".

It is the same with the words "Negro," or "Black people", or "African". Immediately when any one of these words comes to mind, there arises in our mind a picture to go with the word. This mind picture of our own is made up of a number of impressions we have received from the books we studied as children, from the movies, from the funny papers, and from other sources.

As we shall see, it is very important in dealing with human beings of any description to know that differences between them may be as important as the similarities they show. It is also very important in dealing with strange people to realize that they have many customs and practices which may seem to be "funny" or peculiar to us, but which to them are very important parts of their life, as they have been for centuries. It may be shocking to some people to think of these matters, but it will help in understanding and in the conduct of business with strange peoples to remember that as these strange people are peculiar to us, we are peculiar to them.

One of the best examples of these differences is to be found in the somewhat delicate field of body odors. Europeans and Americans sometimes complain that Africans and Orientals have a peculiar body smell. On the other hand, both Africans and Orientals make the same complaint about Europeans and Americans. One African said very seriously that when he came for the first time into a group of Europeans that he nearly fainted, so affected was he by their peculiar odor.

A bitter war with the Ashanti people that cost millions of dollars, and the lives of thousands of British and Ashanti lives, was caused because of the ignorance of a colonial governor of the meaning of the customs of this warlike people in the Gold Coast of West Africa. The Ashanti people had in their possession a "Golden Stool", which they prized highly and which was used in great ceremonies and for the enthronement of their kings. However, the King himself was never allowed to sit on the Golden Stool; when he was enthroned he went through the motions of taking his seat on it, but never actually did so.

~~The British Governor of the Gold Coast~~

The British Governor of the Gold Coast thought that the Golden Stool was the symbol of governmental authority, like the historic Throne of the British kings; and he demanded that the Ashanti turn the Stool over to him, as he represented the supreme authority of the British crown which the Ashanti people had agreed to respect. But in fact the Stool was more than that to the Ashanti; it represented to them the soul of the people, and they believed that if they ever should lose the Stool, every member of the Ashanti people would also lose his individual stool. They therefore refused to turn it over to the British, and the long and costly war followed.

The Ashanti were defeated, but they hid the Stool from the British. Many years later the Stool was discovered by accident as a road was being built through the country where it had been secretly buried. By this time, however, the British, through the studies of a scientist, had learned what the Golden Stool really meant to the Ashanti; and so this time the British did everything they could to restore the Stool to the Ashanti and to restore its honor in their sight. The Ashanti were very grateful and have shown their gratitude by their continued loyalty to the British in times of crisis since that time. ^{then.}

We give the word "Culture" to the combination of customs, practises, tools, instruments, manners, and material objects which set one people apart from another.

This is, of course, a different use of the word "Culture" from that with which we are already acquainted, when we speak of "a cultured man" or a "woman of high culture".

In the sense in which it is used here, the word "Culture" would be used to describe, among Africans, the similarities and differences between different people in ~~the~~ such "cultural" items as the type of houses they live in, the kind of religion they believe in, the kind of tools they use, the kind of clothing they wear, the kind of language they speak, and other facts of their life. Together they represent the "culture" of a people; as in describing the American "culture" we would say that it differs from many other "cultures" ~~in~~ in the great use made of the automobile, in the types of religious practices followed, in the style of buildings favored, in the use of highly developed machinery and labor-saving devices, and the like.

A country like America has, through the movies, the radio, and the automobile, shared the same common "culture" with almost everyone in the entire great country, except in the most backward places; almost everywhere in America people sing the same songs, wear the same kind of clothes, eat the same foods, have the same amusements, and in other ways show great similarity in their daily manner of life. In a great continent like Africa, however, many hundreds of years must pass before such a similarity exists. There are hundreds of different tribes and "cultural" areas in which the customs of the people differ; the one from the other. When, for example, it is realized that in ~~the~~ one colony alone, the Belgian Congo, with a population of eleven million, or about the same as that of New York State, although it is twenty times as big in area, more than two hundred different languages are spoken, these great differences among the African people are evident.

What has been said about "culture" or customs might also be said about the "race" of African peoples. Even today, with all of the knowledge we have of human beings, it is difficult to define what we mean by "race". Just as in Europe the people of the White "race" vary from the swarthy people of Southern Europe to the blonde people of Northern Europe, the Black "race", even in Africa, will be found to range widely from the Yellow and light Brown Hottentot and Bushman people of South Africa, including many brown and dark brown and black people of all parts of the Continent. In Africa, as in other places in the world, color or language do not always tell us what "race" a person belongs to.

Since arguments about the meaning of "race" will get us nowhere, it is enough to let these facts remind us that in Africa, and among what we are accustomed to calling the Negro people of Africa, there are ~~many~~ many differences in appearance, ~~and~~ in manners of life, in language, and in history that need to be understood by the student, ~~and~~ the tourist, the administrator, and by the soldier.

The Negro in the United States is fortunate in that within his own ranks, and in the minds of other persons of other racial groups, little distinction is made. A Negro is a Negro, regardless of his color, individual appearance, or other characteristic. This has been a great advantage to the group called "Negroes" in the United States, in preserving unity of aim and of direction. In other parts of America, and in Africa, it is well to keep in mind the fact that many distinctions are made between groups of people who in the United States would all be called, and placed together in, the "Negro" group. These distinctions are sometimes based on color, and sometimes on economic class; but wherever they exist they are very important in the minds of all classes and conditions of the population.

If we made a survey of racial types in Africa today, we would find a curious mixture in many areas, but with principal types in the largest portions of the Continent. Beginning in Egypt on the Northern Mediterranean coast, and going to the West, we would first find in the old center of civilization at the mouth of the Nile a Semitic type, similar to the peoples of Syria and Palestine and other portions of the Middle East. We would find in Egypt also many Europeans, principally Italians and Greeks. In Libya we would find many Italians, especially on the fertile coastal stretch; in the desert country we would find nomadic tribes of Semitic, principally Arabic, extraction. In French Tunisia and Algeria we would find many French people who have made their home in these fertile provinces within the last century; we would also find many Semitic peoples - Arabs, Jews, and still older stocks that go back to the ancient Phoenician peoples who settled North Africa from the great ancient cities of

Sidon and Tyre on the Syrian coast. In French and Spanish Morocco we would find many Southern European immigrants - Spanish, French, Italian - while the majority of the population is composed of mixed peoples of a Semitic strain. In the mountains of Morocco and Mauretania are fierce and warlike tribes, many of whom, in their blue eyes and blonde appearance, show their inheritance from the ancient Gothic and Vandal tribes which invaded North Africa at the time of the Fall of Rome, fifteen hundred years ago.

In all of these lands black people may be found. The slave trade until very recent years brought many black people from Central Africa across the desert and down the Nile to the Mediterranean coast. The African shore of the Mediterranean has been a battleground between Semitic and European and African peoples for four thousand years. The result has been a ceaseless mixture of racial types of all description for that period of time.

The great Sahara Desert has, however, acted as a kind of barrier to the South of the Mediterranean. Pierce nomadic tribes, including the Touaregs and Berbers, and wandering Arabs, make their home in the desert and in the few oases where water may be obtained for man and beast.

In the introductory chapter to this booklet it was pointed out that ^{white} ~~man~~, for convenience in describing them, we list the African people as "black people", disregarding all minor differences, the great mass falls into three principal classes:

1. The Hamitic peoples, extending across Africa from West to East in a rough belt just South of the Sahara desert.
2. The Negro peoples, concentrated on the West Coast of Africa between the Niger and the Congo rivers.
3. The Bantu peoples, spread from the Congo river and the great lakes of Africa down to the tip of the Continent.

These general areas may be seen by reference to the map (see p.). The Hamitic peoples are seen extended from East to West, beginning in that projection of North-east Africa known as the "Horn of Africa" at the mouth of the Red Sea, skirting the Sahara desert in that section of Africa known as the Sudan, and touching the Atlantic Ocean in the vicinity of Dakar and St. Louis. It is supposed that the Hamitic peoples are a mixture of the so-called Negro races with Semitic tribes from Asia.

In appearance these Hamitic peoples range in color from light brown to black; their facial appearance shows more the straight nose and thin lips of the Semite, as compared to the Negro's flattened nose and full lips; and they are generally very tall in stature as compared to their black and brown neighbors. The Galla and Masai people of East Africa are regarded as typical Hamitic types, as are the Mandingo people of West Africa. The Galla have been used widely by the Italians as ~~native~~ Askari (native) troops, in the pacification of Eritrea, in campaigns in Libya and Abyssinia, and in the recent defense of Eritrea and Somaliland against the Allies. The Abyssinians are themselves a mixture of Hamitic, Semitic, and Negro elements of long fusion. In Abyssinia and throughout Africa the custom of taking captured or slave women of all races and using them as concubines, with the children following the condition and status of the father, has produced numerous mixed groups. For this reason many of the tribes called "Arab" in Africa in the United States would be regarded as of definite Negro extraction. (See photograph, Tippoo Tib, p.).

The Sudan has been called the greatest museum of race mixture in the world. In that portion of the ~~Upper~~ Sudan surrounding the Upper Nile, are to be found at least five different classes, mixed as they are in day-to-day life. These are (1), the camel owning Arabs, (2) the Negro tribes of Darfur, (3) the Negro dwellers in towns or villages, (4) the cattle owning Arabs, the Baggara tribes; and (5) the cattle owning Negroes and Negro-like peoples. The Negroes of the Upper Nile, sometimes called the Nilotic Negroes, are said to include the tallest people in the world, many tribes showing an average height of six feet six inches for men, and six feet for women.

In the Central and Western Sudan are to be found mixed races of Negroes, Arabs, and Semitic invaders of long ago. In the colony of Mauretania are found some 300,000 moors.

The nomadic Touaregs, numbering some 250,000, are to be found scattered over the Sahara desert, the ~~Waxan~~ Sudan, and in the great bend of the Niger river. The Fulani, a mixed race of warriors which has an interesting history of great state-building in the Sudan of the past, numbers some million souls.

The Toucouleurs - the name suggesting their mixed appearance (all-colors) - are a product of the crossing of the Fulani people with the Wolofs.

The more Negro-like tribes of the Western Sudan, included in French West Africa, are the Bambaras and Mandingoes, numbering approximately a million persons each, and whose home extends along the Guinea coast; the Wolofs and Sereres, of Senegal - the tribes that furnished most of the Senegalese soldiers who played such an important part in the first World War with the French armies in France; and the Mossi, who live on the Upper Volta river.

In Sierra Leone there is a colony of ex-slaves who were brought to the colony between 1785 and 1815 from England and Canada, after the declaration of the English high court that any person, who set foot on English soil, immediately became a free man. As a result of this famous ruling, a large number of blacks held in slavery in England and Canada were freed, and numbers of them brought to Sierra Leone. The city of Freetown receives its name from this group, who now number 28,000, and live principally in Freetown. They are called "creoles".

In the neighboring state of Liberia, which with Abyssinia are the only two independent states ruled by Africans today, a similar settlement of a group known as Americo-Liberians includes some fifty to seventy thousand descendants of American Negroes who were settled in Liberia more than a hundred years ago after being freed in America.

II. Of the tribal groups belonging to the so-called "true Negro", the Kru people of the Liberian coast are famous throughout Africa for their seamanship. Since deep harbors are scarce along the coast, most ~~straight~~ steamers must load both freight and passengers into barges, lighters, or small boats which are then rowed to beaches or lagoons in-shore. The Kru boatmen have unusual skill and the highly skilled men seen unloading or loading freighters anywhere on the West Coast of Africa are likely to be Kru.

In Nigeria the principal peoples are the Yoruba, who have a long history and the distinction of having developed a written alphabet before the coming of the European; the Ibo speaking people, and the Efik-Ibibio group. In the Northern part of Nigeria are the Hausa, a warlike people whose men are commonly used as soldiers throughout British and French West Africa; and the Nupe people. On the Gold Coast and in the former German colony of Togoland, now divided as a Mandate between France and England, are the famed Ashanti people, the Fantis, the Ewe speaking people, and the Dagomba. At Lagos in Nigeria are to be found a colony known as "Brazilians", who are Negroes who have relatives, or have themselves lived at one time in Brazil, and have returned to set themselves up in trade.

III. At the mouth of the Congo and to the East to the Indian Ocean, and to the South of Africa almost to the Cape of Good Hope, are to be found numerous tribes, all of which belong to the great Bantu branch of the African peoples. It is believed that the Bantu originated on the great plateau of East Africa in the neighborhood of the great lakes. As far as these things can now be traced, without written records, the Bantu began to move from this great table-land about the year 1500. They moved to the South and to the West.

Why they moved is not known. Perhaps they were driven to the South by other tribes pressing upon them from the North; perhaps their numbers became so great that they could no longer find a living in their native home-land. Their great migration must have been much like those of which we have some record in the last days of the Roman Empire of old, when the Germans began to press in on the Gauls because behind them, from what is now Russia, the great Gothic tribes of the East and North, and later the Huns of the far East, were driving them before in great mass migrations of primitive people who had to find a place to live somewhere, and who fled before the terrible savages more savage

and warlike even than themselves.

We do know that when the Portuguese came to South Africa in 1475, and when the British came two hundred years later, the Bantu had not yet reached that section of Africa. He reached South Africa about 1775, finding large numbers of the Hottentot and Bushmen people. The Hottentots were a smallish, yellowish-brown people; they were noted as having "pepper-corn" hair, that is, the hair grew in small tightly curled knots over the head. The Hottentots and Bushmen were also marked by a peculiarity of the women known as steatopygia; that is, the buttocks of the women after youth were extremely prominent and fatty. The Bushmen were a still smaller people who were very primitive, living in caves and given to the use of poisoned arrows for hunting. The Bushmen, however, are famous for the fine drawings of horses, buffaloes, and other animals, and pictures of themselves, which they drew on the walls of the caves in which they lived.

Between the British coming in from the South, and the Bantu from the North, these two races were almost exterminated. Only a few thousand Hottentots are yet left alive in South Africa.

The Bantu peoples are connected by certain customs and practices they have in common, but particularly by the similarity in the many different languages, all of which have common roots. The Bantu also have had remarkable social and political organizations. The Ba-rote people, just North of the Congo, built a great state with millions of inhabitants and with considerable organization just before the Europeans took over the region. Other Bantu peoples of the Congo include the Ba-congo, the Bangalas, the Basongo, the Ba-lubas, the Ba-lokos, and the Ba-runda.

The Ubangi people of the upper Congo are noted ~~that~~ in the United States for the huge disfiguration of the women's lips, extending them to the size of saucers by inserting copper rings and stretching them as the child grows. This practise, exhibited in American circuses as an example of queer native customs, had in fact a very sensible basis. The Ubangi first adopted the practise some three hundred years ago in order to disfigure their young women so much that they would not be stolen away by slave traders and sold to America. Although the slave trade has recently been at least partially ~~stuck~~ ended, the Ubangi now maintain the custom as a part of their old history.

In Portuguese Angola and the former German West Africa the principal Bantu peoples and languages are the Runda, Ganguella, N'bonga, Herrero, and Damara. The Herrero were a great cattle raising tribe which in 1895 rebelled against the Germans. This rebellion is famous in the history of African tribes because of the severity with which the Germans put the rebellion down. ~~Horikawaibik~~ The Germans poisoned and destroyed the water holes used by the Herrero and their cattle, and together with the ~~max~~ results of actual fighting it is estimated that 125,000 Herreroes - men, women and children - were killed.

The great Bantu ~~languages and customs~~ tribes of South Africa are the Bechuanas, the Basuto, the Zulu, the S. Kosa, the Barotse, the Matabele, and the Swazi. Each of these tribes has been notable for their firm discipline and warlike nature, and in times past waged many bitter battles between themselves and with Europeans. Large numbers of Basutos, and other South African tribes, are now fighting with the British Army in Egypt after helping clean up Italian East Africa within the last year.

In East Africa the Gambia, Nganga, Yao, Kua, and the Ganda people of the lakes region brings us to the Kenya territory where the Masai, Galla, and Somali people begin to outnumber the ~~mtgiani~~ Bantu stock. Along the coast Arabs are numerous.

To add to the complications of racial difficulties between Europeans and African Natives are large colonies of Hindus who formerly were imported to South and East Africa in the hope of providing a steadier labor supply. The Hindus, however, have principally gone into small business, and their large numbers in such areas as Durban, Dar-es-Salaam, and the Kenya colony generally, constitute a great problem.

In the vicinity of Cape Town there is a large number of people known as the "Cape Coloured". These are descendants of the mixture between the Hottentots and early Europeans, as well as later admixtures. As a "coloured people" they have a place which they and Europeans consider to be superior to that of the pure, unmixed native population.

Lan- One of the great difficulties connected with opening up Africa to modern
 gua- science and communication is the great variety of languages spoken by the
 ges. people. We have said before that more than 200 different languages - although
 all belong to the great Bantu group - are spoken in the Belgian Congo alone.
 The same condition exists elsewhere in Africa. It is clear that it would be greatly
 advantageous to the future of Africa, and of Africans, if there was greater uniformity
 in speech.

The numerous settlements by European countries ^{have} ~~has~~ further added to the problem. When the Germans had colonies in Africa, they naturally wished German to be the official language of the people and of the sections they ruled; and so likewise with the French, the Portuguese, the English, the Belgians (using French), ~~and~~ the Italians, and the Spanish.

Schools have been set up both by colonial governments, and more particularly by missionaries. Each section met this problem; if the French, for example, wished to teach all of the natives the French language, they had to substitute a new language for an old one. There was neither enough money provided to establish enough schools, nor, had the schools been established, enough teachers familiar with both the French and the native language, to provide for these schools.

In recent years the different governments have made efforts to establish standard languages, and to narrow down the different languages spoken and taught in the schools to a very few out of the many from which choice could be made.

It has also been suggested that all governments should adopt one basic African language and teach this language in all of the colonial schools, whether French, English, Portuguese, or other nationality. The language most frequently recommended is Swahili.

Originating on the East Coast of Africa, Swahili has become the language that every African must know if he wishes to get along outside of the area where his own language is spoken. It was once thought to be a sort of "pidgeon Arab", but scholars now agree that it is a pure Bantu tongue, made up of many such Bantu languages by borrowing words and phrases from a wide variety. It has been carried through Africa over all the East Coast, ~~and even~~ as far to the West as the Congo delta; traders found that Swahili could be understood, or that traders in villages along the way could be found who understood the language. There are Arab words in Swahili, but they have been completely made a part of it. It is closely related to all East African languages, and, indeed, to all Bantu languages.

One of the features of African languages that makes them difficult to learn is that much of the meaning is based on inflection (sound) changes; in other words, as if in English the word "Sweet" when said with a high tone would mean sugar, with a middle tone would mean sour, and with a low tone would mean bitter. In order to learn the average African language, therefore, it is necessary not only to learn a large number of words, but also to learn the meaning of the differences in tone with which the same word may be used to express a different meaning. In South Africa many of the Bantu

~~South~~ people, including the Zulus, borrowed another peculiarity from the Hottentots. This was the use of a "clicking" sound to denote special means, and is called by language scholars the "Hottentot click".

Fortunately, Swahili does not have this tone feature, and is therefore a much easier language to learn. There are two principal dialects of Swahili, the Mombasa (Kiswaha) and the Zanzibar (Kiumaja). The Zanzibar dialect is the more widely spread, and is spoken along the entire East African Coast, and as far West as the ~~mouth~~ mouth of the Congo.

Aside from Swahili, the language problem in Africa is as complicated as the native jungles of the Continent. In some areas, as in Uganda, one language is spoken by the upper classes and the rulers - the last people to conquer the territory - while another language is spoken by the conquered, usually the farmers.

In the Portuguese colonies authorities discourage the use of native languages, boosting Portuguese as the only official language. However, here one meets immediately

the problem - if Portuguese only is to be spoken, who is to teach it to the natives? European teachers would be entirely too expensive. Thonga is the principal language of Portuguese East Africa, while Kongo and Umbundu are the main languages of Angola.

In the Belgian Congo - with the terrible problem of its two hundred different languages - the Government has recognized four major native languages: Kongo, Luba, a modified Swahili, and Lingala. Lingala is itself a combination language of Bangi, Lolo, and Ngala. In addition, the Belgians allow business accounts to be kept in Ruanda and Rundi for official inspection purposes.

In the French territories the leading language of West Africa is Mandingo; and there are three dialects of this language officially recognized: Djula, Bambara, and Malinke. The French, however, above all other colonial powers in Africa have insisted that French be the official language, and that all natives should learn French. French is used in the schools; as elsewhere, it is found a terrific job to teach native children who are at home only in their own language. In French Equatorial Africa, Sango, a combination language, is widely used by interpreters and traders. In the Sudan Arabic, Fulani, ~~subangondimasta~~ Hausa, and other languages dominate. In Senegal Wolof is widely spoken in the vicinity of Dakar.

In British Sierra Leone the main languages are Mende, Temne, Limba, Kono-vai, and Manenka. In Liberia Kru and Mandingo predominate. On the Gold Coast the chief languages are Twi-Fante, Ga, Ewe, and Dagomba; in Nigeria, Yoruba, Ibo, Efik-Ibibio; in Northern Nigeria Hausa, Nupe, Tiv, Kamuria, and Fulani.

In South Africa, seven Bantu languages are officially recognized; Zulu, Xhosa, Tswana, Sotho (Northern and Southern dialects), Thonga-Shangaan, and Venda. Ngoni (Xhosa and Zulu), Sotho, Venda, and Thonga are languages which can be understood by any one understanding one of the group; and the same principle applies to Herrero and Ambo in the old German Southwest Africa, now mandated to the Union of South Africa.

In Rhodesia the principal languages are Bantu in the North, and Ila-Tonga in the South. Swahili is spoken in many places. In Nyasaland Ngoni is the principal language. In Mozambique, Tanganyika, and Kenya, Swahili is the current language of trade and interpretation. In Uganda, Ganda is a widely used language.

In Abyssinia the Amharic language is of great age as both a written and spoken language. Galla is a language, in many dialects, widely spoken through Somaliland and Eritrea. Swahili and Arabic continue everywhere along the East Coast to be the languages of trade and communication.

A form of "Pidgeon" language is spoken in most of the African areas. In Nigeria a form of "Pidgeon English" is widely used, and it has been suggested that the new "Basic English" be substituted for it. In South Africa a peculiar mixture of Dutch, English, and the Bantu languages is called "Kitchen Kaffir", and is used as the means of understanding between European bosses and native workers.

Surely Africa shows as much a "confusion of languages" as the Tower of Babel ever did. It is to be hoped that from this confusion will arise a standard and commonly accepted language which will help greatly to bring the "Dark and Bloody" continent into the light of modern times.

CHAPTER III.

THE HISTORY OF THE NEGRO IN AFRICA - ANCIENT AND PRE-EUROPEAN

Egypt: Nubia and Merce: ancient migrations; Hannibals' Invasion of Europe: The Battle of Lake Trasimene: History of Great African States

THE HISTORY OF THE NEGRO IN AFRICA - ANCIENT AND
PRE-EUROPEAN

Egypt; Nubia and Meroe; ancient migrations; Hannibal's Invasion of Europe;
The Battle of Lake Trasimene; History of Great ~~Roman~~ States; Prester John;
the Mashonaland Ruins:

African

The American soldiers fighting in the Libyan and Egyptian campaigns who had the chance must have taken leave to go a little up the Nile from Cairo and into the desert sands to gaze upon the Great Sphinx, one of the world's oldest and most impressive monuments. Those soldiers could not but help noticing that the Sphinx has features that are decidedly ~~European~~ Negro-like; there is no mistaking the shape of the nose and of the lips, although the old stones are greatly weathered by the four thousand years which have passed over them.

Some archaeologists (students of old ruins) have had little to say about the Negro in ancient Egypt, while others have argued that the Negro was present in Egypt only as a slave. However, many of the sculptured heads of the queens of Egypt that have been preserved might pass for a copy of Negro girls who may be seen everyday ~~in the streets of London, on Eighth Avenue in Birmingham, on South Parkway in Chicago, or on Lenox Avenue or Beale Street or Rampart Street or Auburn Avenue.~~ And certainly the ancient Egyptians would not have erected so great a monument as the Sphinx, and given it the face of a Negro man, had they known the race only as slaves.

The great "Kings of the South", and the Kingdoms of Meroe and Ethiopia, are mentioned several times in the Bible. While there is considerable doubt that these were "Negro" kingdoms, they were certainly established and maintained by people who were greatly mixed with Negro people. The Egyptians themselves used Negro slaves and relied on Negro soldiers from the Upper Nile to provide a large part of their armies. The historian Herodotus, in telling of the campaigns of the Persian king Cambyses in Egypt and in Libya, refers to the Nubian Negro soldiers who as part of the Egyptian armies lured Cambyses into the Libyan desert where his army suffered a crushing defeat, and thousands died of thirst and hunger. Alexander the Great, and Caesar in his time, fought over the same desert stretches where the tanks of Rommel of the Germans and Auchinleck of the British now try to destroy each other. As the Italians have used black "Askari" (native) troops in all of their African campaigns, and as the British have used black troops in the present struggle for Egypt, so did the ancient armies three thousand years ago include black men from the South.

There are several theories to account for the different types of black people - Hamites, Bantu, and the so-called "true Negro" - in and throughout Africa. One theory is that the most ancient people to live along the Mediterranean Sea, in times before history was written, were the people who survive in small numbers in South Africa today as the Bushmen. There are caves in Southern France, in Sicily and in Southern Italy where paintings and drawings much like those of the Bushmen of South Africa are found. These paintings are thousands upon thousands of years old.

The existence today in many places in the Pacific, and in Australia, of black men has led many people to believe that at some ancient time before recorded history began there was a vast migration of black people from the Pacific, around the curve of the Indian shore, into and across Arabia, and so to the Horn of Africa. ~~and~~ The people of the Island of Madagascar, off the South-eastern coast of Africa, are racially and culturally kin to the Negrito people of ~~Malaya~~ New Guinea, the Philippines, Borneo, and Australia. Of course these people might have come by sea, or in still more ancient times there may have been a land-bridge connecting South Africa with the Indies.

Once in Africa, so the theory continues, the "true Negro" types flourished in the vicinity of the Horn of Africa - present day Somaliland. They multiplied, but in a few centuries they suffered another migration, this time by Hamitic peoples

crossing from Arabia to Africa and driving the Negroes before them. Some of the Negro tribes were driven into the swamps of the Upper Nile, where they remain today as the Nilotic Negro tribes. Others were driven before the invading Hamites around the curve of the Congo River, and so to West Africa.

According to this theory, the Hamite invaders also mingled with the Negro tribes. This mingling gave rise to the Bantu people. New waves of Hamite invaders drove the Bantu down the Eastern African plateau to the South, where they exterminated the Bushmen and Hottentott about the year 1750. Slowly growing and multiplying, the Bantu people turned to the Northwest and within the last seventy-five years had reached the mouth of the Congo river.

As no recorded history of these movements ~~exists~~ exists, and as they took place, if at all, for the most part thousands of years ago, there must remain considerable doubt as to exactly what has taken place. Yet the picture of great masses of people moving thousands of miles as a result of the pressure of enemies, or of too-rapid growth of population, or of disease and famine, is a true picture. We know this is exactly what happened in Europe in the last four or five hundred years of the Roman Empire, although the only record we have of the mass movements of the savage Germanic and Gothic and Slavic tribes is to be found in the historical accounts of the Romans who tried to keep these barbarians from coming into the Roman Empire for several hundred years.

In Caesar's book of his military experiences, called his "Commentaries", and once widely studied in our schools, he describes the savage and uncivilized customs of the Germans of his day; they ate raw meat, they sacrificed living victims to their outlandish Gods, and they had no fixed place of abode except rude settlements in the forest. While these savage tribes finally broke into and helped destroy the Roman Empire fifteen hundred years ago, it was the influence of the Roman civilization that finally "civilized" the wild tribes of Europe.

Something of the same process has been happening in Africa. As we shall see, many African peoples, at the time when the Continent was opened up by Europeans, actually enjoyed a state of civilization and culture which was far superior to that of the Germans whom Caesar knew two thousand years ago. Other tribes, however, were of approximately the same level of these ancient foes - and victims - of the great Roman General.

Hannibal The story of another great general of ancient times - Hannibal - has interest for students of military science, and of Africa as well. Hannibal was born in the city of Carthage, near where the present city of Tunis is located, in the year 249 B. C. (Two hundred and forty-nine years before the beginning of the Christian era, or 2,191 (249 plus 1942) years ago). The people of Carthage were the descendants of the old Phoenicians, who from the cities of Tyre and Sidon on the coast of Palestine had been the great traders and explorers of the ancient world. The Phoenicians had established colonies in Southern Italy, over North Africa, in Spain, in Great Britain, and are even believed to have had a thriving trade with many places on the West Coast of Africa. Carthage was their chief colony, and, in time, ~~was~~ outgrew the parent city.

To the North of Carthage, on the western shore of Italy, the city of Rome was growing to be a powerful nation. As Rome conquered the tribes and cities of Italy, it became evident that the struggle for the future domination of the Mediterranean World would lie between Rome and Carthage. In the first war between these rivals, the Carthaginians at first had a great advantage over the Romans because they controlled the seas with their fine navy. The Romans showed their right to challenge by taking to the Sea for the first time, and, after many experiments, succeeded in driving the Carthaginians from the Sea.

The peace that followed was an uneasy one. Spain was dominated by Carthage; ever-growing Rome ~~with~~ cast jealous eyes through Gaul (Southern France) to Spain where the Carthaginians had a thriving trade, and had extensive tin and iron mines. The commanding general of the Carthaginians in Spain was Hamilcar Barca. In a desire to ~~win~~ gain revenge for the humiliation of his country by the

Romans, Hamilcar brought up his little son, Hannibal, in the army camps which he commanded in Spain.

In the year 218 B. C., when he was thirty-one years old, Hannibal, after years of preparation, felt himself ready to take the offensive against Rome. Since the Romans now commanded the Mediterranean, Hannibal decided to invade Italy by taking his army through Spain into Southern France, and by crossing the Alps descend from the North upon his hated enemy.

This was a bold undertaking; but Hannibal was one of the greatest generals of all time. Among the high military qualities which serve as good guides today as they did two thousand years ago were his mastery of that basic military principle, "to get there first with the most men" and with the most offensive power. He also had an Army that was thoroughly disciplined by long years of warfare against the native tribes in Spain; he was a careful planner of strategy and always carried out careful reconnaissance before a battle; and to begin his campaign ~~he had to face~~ the Romans for the first time that ancient equivalent of the tank - Elephants. had to

The Elephant was used as a war animal by the people of the Middle East and of India for thousands of years. Being the fine soldiers they were, the Romans in time discovered the answer to the Elephant; but this was only when they were near defeat. The Elephant's fatal defect as an instrument of war was that he was likely to get panic stricken in the midst of the excitement of battle, and when this happened his driver was powerless to control him; the Elephant was as likely to charge back into the ranks of his own Army, throwing them into disorder, as he was to charge the enemy. As today we have discovered that a deadly enemy of the tank is to throw blazing gasoline on the monster, the Romans finally found the answer to the Elephant by throwing swabs of blazing cotton doused in pitch at him. The Elephant did not catch on fire, but he lost his head.

Hannibal's plan was daring and had all of the elements of the unexpected. He had to cross ~~the~~ two great mountain ranges - the Pyrenees between Spain and France, and the Alps between France and Italy. He had also to make crossings of unbridged rivers with the simplest aids - home-made rafts - which he built as he went along. The 46 thousand men with whom he left Spain included fifteen thousand cavalry, and both men and beasts had to live on the country as they proceeded.

Hannibal's greatest feat of taking this large body of men through a hostile country - for the native tribes in many cases supported the Romans - ~~was~~ in the crossing of the River Rhone in the face of an hostile army of Gallic tribesmen, and the crossing of the Alps in late October with the savage tribesmen throwing javelins, discharging arrows, and rolling down huge rocks upon him. He got his temperamental Elephants across the Rhone by building huge rafts and covering them with grassy turf to make them feel they were on land.

When Hannibal had crossed the Alps, he found himself with only 26000 men. These men included some ten thousand hardy desert horsemen from North Africa, a division of light ~~infantry~~ troops, ~~mounted divisions of heavy-armed troops~~ armed with bows and light swords, two divisions of heavy-armed troops, with javelins and spears, and a special "shock" brigade of Negro troops armed with darts (short spears).

After spending the winter of 218-217 in camp in North Italy, Hannibal started for the South. The Romans had assembled a huge army under the Consul Flaminius. Hannibal evaded this army and got between the Roman Armies and their city on the East bank of Lake Trasimene. Flaminius followed quickly, determined to overtake and crush Hannibal before he got further to the South.

Here Hannibal led the Romans into as neat a trap as the records of War have ever seen. The mountains at Lake Trasimene come down almost to the edge of the water, leaving a narrow roadway which is entered at either end by a still narrower pass. Hannibal camped at the Southeast end of the Lake, but during the night moved his army through the mountains so as to make an ambush in flank of the entire roadway along the Lake. He posted his ~~Negro~~ troops ~~xxx~~ hidden in the forest on the mountain side; he placed his Gauls and Numidians at the North entrance of the trap, and his heavy troops at the South end.

Negro

The Romans had as their form of military organization the Legion; this finely organized and disciplined group of nearly ten thousand men was hard to defeat when drawn up in order. The Romans had, however, the very bad military habit of marching in considerable disorder and without sufficient reconnaissance. Hannibal was therefore able to let the entire Roman army come into the trap without any suspicion of the ambush; a heavy morning mist also helped conceal the Carthaginians hidden on the hillside.

At a signal, the entire Carthaginian army fell upon the Romans. Already in disorder, they had no time to form their battle ranks; and in an hour the Romans were completely cut to pieces, captured, or driven into the lake. Out of an Army of fifty thousand men, only six thousand escaped, due to the presence of mind of one legion commander who rallied his men at the South ~~exit~~ exit from the trap and led them to cut their way through to the open road. These men were captured the next day. Hannibal lost 1500 men.

Hannibal was unable to follow up by taking Rome, for it was too strongly fortified, and he had no heavy instruments used in those days to besiege walled cities. He went on to Southern Italy, where for the next nine years he carried on brilliant campaigns against the Romans, while looking for help from Carthage. Help was sent finally under his brother Hasdrubal, but Hasdrubal's army was intercepted by the ~~Sixteenth~~ Romans in North Italy and destroyed. Finally Hannibal was obliged to steal away to Carthage, where he witnessed the final defeat of ~~his~~ his city by the Romans and the extension of Roman power throughout the entire Mediterranean.

As Negro troops were thus used by Hannibal, they were used by all ancient armies and generals; indeed, the Roman armies in the time of the Roman Empire was made up almost entirely by people of other races; the Romans using Germans in Africa, Africans in Germany, Syrians in Spain, and Spaniards in Syria. The Romans, unlike the Phoenicians and the Carthaginians, were not adventurous seamen and explorers; and to this we may lay the failure of the Roman Empire to reach the Coasts of Africa with the stimulating effects of Trade as had been the case with their rivals for supremacy in the Mediterranean.

Ancient In the Arab language the Sudan is "Bilad es Sudan" - the Land of the Blacks.

One historian has said that this great area has the most interesting past of any Native section of Africa, not even excluding the Nile Valley, and the great ancient glories States of Egypt.

In this section, and in other places in Africa, great states were built up by black people before the coming of the European to Africa. More than a thousand years ago great ~~black~~ black emperors ruled over ~~the~~ rich and powerful countries stretching over hundreds of thousands of miles and including in the population millions of people.

The great German scholar Frobenius, who has devoted his life to the study of African culture, believed that the legendary lost continent of Atlantis, from which the Atlantic Ocean takes its name, and which is said once to have occupied the narrow stretch from West Africa to the bulge of Brazil, was really a great Negro kingdom on the West Coast of which the city of Benin and the Yoruba State are the sole remnants. We cannot be sure of this, but we do know that black people did figure in great state building in the Sudan and in West Africa, few traces of which have been left today.

In the year 758, when the Moors had conquered Spain, these Mohammedan conquerors founded the Caliphate of Cordova. The ruling prince was supported by an army of Negroes from the Sudan and of enslaved Christians from the Balkans. As the power of the Arabs in Spain declined, they turned more and more to the Sudan. In the tenth century and afterward the Arabs found great Negro states in existence, to which they added the fine artistic and mental culture which they had before carried to Spain. The three principal states were those of Ghana, in the Northern Sudan; the Kingdom of the Wolofs on the Senegal River; the Kingdom of the Mandingoes stretching from the Niger and the Senegal rivers, and the great Songhay empire along the central Niger.

The learned Negro scholar Dubois tells the story of a Berber king who captured one of the cities of the Sudan, whereupon all of the black women of the city committed suicide because they were too proud to let themselves fall into the hands of people of a race not their own.

The kingdom of Melle extended from the upper Niger to the sea. The spread of Mohammedanism ~~is~~ added a warlike faith to the people, for converts believed that to die while fighting for the faith was a sure passport to a Heaven where all delights awaited the slain believer who had died for his faith; multitudes of the most beautiful women, the most delicious foods and drinks, the most entrancing music - all were to be the reward of the true believer who died to make all men believe that Mohammed was Allah and Allah was Mohammed.

The great trade of the Sudan was, at the time of the coming of the Arabs, in gold dust from the Niger river valley. In 1240 a great Sultan, a black man named Sundiata Keita, extended his possessions and began to develop agriculture and cotton raising. The King Congo-Mussa who ruled Melle from 1307 to 1332 was the most outstanding ruler of this great state. In the year 1324, as a faithful Mohammedan, he made a pilgrimage to Mecca accompanied by 12,000 porters and servants. His riches may be imagined when it is known that when he arrived in Egypt on his way to Mecca he had with him 24000 pounds of Gold dust.

The Kingdom of Songhay succeeded to the glories of the Kingdom of Melle. This kingdom had its capital at famed Timbuktu, and its greatest ruler was the scholar and patron of the arts, Mohammed Askia, whose reign lasted from 1493 to 1591. Askia went to Mecca on his pilgrimage in 1497, taking fifteen hundred soldiers and \$900,000 in gold. His army was strictly professional and he brought artists, silversmiths, metal workers of all descriptions, and great scholars to work and teach at Timbuktu. During his lifetime Askia subdued the Mossi, the powerful people to the South; the Hausa, whose warlike qualities are still recognized by their use in French and British military organizations; and ended by ruling an empire as large as Europe, stretching over two million square miles, from the Nile to the Atlantic Ocean and from the Sahara almost to the Gulf of Guinea. He founded a University at Sankore, and the students and professors carried on lengthy exchanges of information with other great Mohammedan universities in Egypt, North Africa, and the Middle East.

The Empire of Songhay was destroyed in 1591 when the Moors came across the desert to attack and to plunder the fabulously wealthy city of Timbuktu. The Moorish army used cannon and this was the first use of such weapons in lower Africa South of the Sahara.

The final outcome of the fall of Songhay was that the state ~~was~~ shut itself away and the great city of Timbuktu away from the outside world. It was not until early in the present century that Europeans forced themselves into this city and discovered the riches of what ~~was~~ a French writer described as "Timbuktu the mysterious."

It is important to note that the Arabs succeeded in spreading the Mohammedan religion throughout the Sudan; and today the chief religion of African peoples almost to the Equator is that of Mohammedanism.

The story of the Golden Stool of the Ashanti^{in part} people has been told before. The Stool was supposed, by legend, to have been called down from Heaven by a great magician in the year 1700. The Stool came from Heaven covered with Gold, and the magician told the Ashanti people that with it was bound up their power, their honor, their welfare; and that if it were ever captured, the soul of the Ashanti people would perish. With the Golden Stool as a symbol, the Ashanti became a fearless people, conquering all who came against them. The great British soldier Lord Wolseley, who was Governor of the Gold Coast in 1874 and the leader of the British expedition against the Ashanti in that year, had this to say of them:

"From the Ashantees I learnt an important lesson, namely, that any virile race can become paramount in its own region of the world if it possesses the courage, the constancy of purpose and the self-sacrifice to resolve that it will live under a stern system of ~~military~~ Spartan military discipline, ruthlessly enforced by one lord and master, the King. In other words, if it be recognized clearly by any people that the interests and comfort of the individual, whether he be king or subject, should not be the first object of national solicitude, but rather that it should be the greatness and power of the state as a whole, a greatness which brings with it national pride

individual security and also contentment, that nation will rule over its neighbors.
The Ashantee and the Fantee were absolutely of the same race. The former were a proud nation of brave and daring soldiers, living happily and contentedly under the most absolute of kings.....The latter were cowardly, lazy, good for nothing vagabonds, with all of the vices of the Ashantees but with none of his manly courage."

It is probable that Lord Wolseley did not take into account the fact that the Fantees, living closer to the center of the slave trade on the Coast, had been exposed to the disorganizing influence of the slave trade, with its cheap and rot-gut gin and whiskey exchanged for slaves, ~~than the Ashantees.~~

The great state of Benin, on the Gold Coast, existed from 1350 to 1897. Benin is famous for the fine art work of its sculptures and for the beautiful mastery of fashioning objects out of terra-cotta in which the natives were highly skilled. The bronze gates of the city of Benin, highly ^{decorated} ~~ornate~~, are now in the British Museum; but the natives of the area still carry on casting in bronze and their work is highly prized throughout the world of art.

It was the high culture of Benin that led Frobenius to say that here, on the West Coast of Africa, had been located the fabled city of the ancients now lost to view - the fabled City of Atlantis.

indent

CHAPTER IV.

THE HISTORY OF THE NEGRO IN AFRICA - EUROPEAN CONTACTS

The Slave Trade - Indians and Negroes as Slaves - Slavery in Africa and in the New World -
The Way Slaves Were Traded - Types and Tribes of Africans made slaves - The Beginning of
European settlements - The Slave Coast - The opening up of Africa - The Slave Trade
abolished - The Ashantee Wars as example of European Penetration

THE HISTORY OF THE NEGRO IN AFRICA - EUROPEAN CONTACTS

The slave trade - establishment of European settlements - the Ashanti wars - the Zulu wars - detail of the battle of Isandhlwana - detail of the Boer War and the Battle of Colenso - detail of the Sudan campaign and the siege of Khartoum, 1882-1884 - detail of the Italo-Abyssinian campaign of 1896 and the battle of Adoua -

We have seen that the life of Africans in ancient times was a steady history of bloody ~~war~~ battles and wars before the coming of the European. The ancient Negro people fought against the Hamitic people, and were driven across the Central African forest to the West Coast of Africa. The children of the mixing of the Hamites with the Negro people gave rise to the Bantu, and these hardy people spread quickly, forced by the Hamites, down through Africa on the Eastern side to the tip of the Continent, where they ~~helped~~ helped exterminate the Hottentott and Bushmen people. The coming of Mohammedanism to the Sudan a thousand years ago brought religious wars but resulted also in the creation of great states which fought endlessly with each other.

The beginning of the slave trade to supply the new colonies discovered by Columbus in America began a new and even bloodier chapter in the history of African peoples. First the Portuguese, and then the Spanish and the British, to be followed by every other nationality in Europe, found the slave trade the most profitable business they could carry on. The Spaniards in the New World were looking only for gold; and they seized the Indians whom they found on the islands of the Carribean and on the mainland, and forced them to work in the ^{gold} and silver mines. ~~which they~~

The Indians could not stand up under the treatment they received. Literally millions of them died from the new diseases - Tuberculosis, Pneumonia, Influenza, and Syphilis - which the Spaniards for the first time brought to America. In an island like San Domingo, it was estimated that nearly a half million Indian natives were exterminated in fifty years of the first Spanish occupation.

It was soon discovered that the new islands were also rich producers of goods that sold for high prices in the European markets. ~~There~~ There were "Seven Great Labors" in the New World: Indigo, Cotton, Gold, Cocoa, Coffee, ^{Sugar} and ^{Tobacco}. Each of these required large numbers of workers who could labor in the stifling heat of the tropical sun, and grow neither sick nor weary.

It is sometimes said that the Indian could not endure slavery because of his nobleness of soul. It is rather true that the Indian could not live under the hard conditions of mine and plantation slavery, ^{while the Negro could} for two other real reasons. In the first place, the Negro was a better physical specimen. He had greater strength and endurance. In the second place, the Negro came from a higher level of civilization than the Indian, and was therefore better able to fit himself into the settled life of a plantation worker than could the wild and nomadic Indian. In Africa the Negro had been already a man who lived from the cultivation of crops, while the Indians were a people who lived by hunting and fishing, not yet having achieved the stage of agricultural cultivation and settlement.

Slavery was not new to the Negro. Slavery had existed among the people of Africa as it has among all such people, including the ancient Hebrews of the Bible. Slavery in Africa, ^{almost} however, was relatively mild; ~~since~~ since the production of goods and of foods was ^{almost} wholly for consumption and not for sale, there was no reason for masters to work the slaves to the last inch of their energy.

Slavery in the New World was entirely different. The slave was a living machine, whose purpose in life was to produce as much wealth as his strength and skill permitted him ~~to~~. Of course masters knew the slave was valuable, and therefore were not likely to injure or ~~destroy~~ destroy this valuable source of wealth. But slavery in a plantation system can be understood ^{only} if we remember that the chief purpose in having slaves was to make money for the man who owned the slaves, as the chief purpose in having mules or tractors on a farm is to make money with them.

In the period after 1600, and especially from 1700 to 1800, the plantation system flourished in Brazil, in the islands of the Caribbean, and in the Southern part of the United States. There seemed to be no end to the riches which these plantations could produce and sell in Europe at great profit, and so new land was eagerly sought for and new slaves needed to work the land. The trade with Africa in slaves therefore grew by leaps and bounds.

~~Slaves were taken from the interior of Africa by the slave traders.~~

The big companies which financed the slave trade were located in Bristol, Liverpool, and London, England; in Rotterdam and Amsterdam in Holland; in Bordeaux and Marseillaise, France; at Lisbon in Portugal, and Cadiz in Spain. A Bristol merchant would outfit a slave ship with trade articles - old flintlock muskets, gunpowder, knives, glass beads, and - a great favorite in the later days - Gin. The slave ship would be a very small one by modern standards, hardly more than one hundred and fifty feet long, and of about a ~~thousand~~^{two} tons or less deadweight. The ship had a floor below decks divided into two partitions, one for the women, and one for the men.

The slave ship, after leaving Bristol, would sail down the West Coast of Africa. Here the ship would call at one of the forts and trading centers established by Europeans; ~~if~~ in most years he had to be careful to avoid attack, for even in peace times pirates were abroad and even ~~merchant~~^{war} ships of a so-called friendly nation might take the chance of attacking him without warning.

Once on the "Slave Coast", the slave ship would put into shore and begin a trade for "black ivory" with the slave merchant who had established headquarters there. The slave ship captain exchanged his trade objects for slaves, and the slave merchant in turn bought up slaves from traders who went into the interior to ~~find~~^{first} buy or capture slaves. As in Africa slavery was a condition into which one fell by being unable to pay a debt, or through the commission of a minor offense against the King, the slave trader might purchase a number of slaves from some local king, who drew them from his own community. Or, wishing to get in a supply of gunpowder, or muskets, or Gin, the King or Chief might decide to stage a raid upon a neighboring village or tribe to seize a few slaves to sell.

This dreadful trade helps us understand how the African states that did exist when Europeans came to Africa were in a state of constant warfare, and how it was difficult to build up any kind of stable society in places where the slave trade was carried on.

Once the slave trader had assembled a likely group of slaves - mercilessly weeding out the sick or infirm, and the old, and preferring men to women - he took them to the Coast where he sold them to the coast trader, who in turn placed the slaves in a "concentration camp" called a barracoon, until he had collected a large enough number to load a slave ship.

When the slaves were taken aboard the slave ship, the men were handcuffed ~~in~~ in pairs and chained to the floor. The women were placed in another partition, but not usually chained. Just enough space was left so that each slave usually had ten inches in width and six feet in length of the floor on which to lie; as a result, they were obliged to sleep on their sides. As many as ~~five~~^{four} hundred slaves would be loaded on a single ship, the Captains figuring on an average of 25% losses by death before the end of the voyage. It was necessary to chain the men both to keep them from violence, and to prevent ~~also~~ suicides, as the Africans would throw themselves into the ocean if they had the chance.

As the voyage to America took from four to six weeks, the slave ships were always in grave danger of epidemics striking the ship in the hot latitudes through which the ships sailed. Although some effort was made to preserve cleanliness on some ships, the overcrowding of the slaves and their narrow quarters made a high degree of hygiene and sanitation impossible. Some sailors reported that a slave ship could be smelled for ten miles.

Once arrived at a port like Havana, in Cuba, or Bahia, Brazil, or Port-au-Prince in San Domingo, or Savannah in the North American British colonies, the slaves would be unloaded and taken to a slave market. Here they would be kept for several days to enable them to recover from the hardships of their passage, that they might command the better prices. Finally they were sold at auction, either directly to planters, or to middlemen who took them farther inland for sale to plantation owners.

The slave trade soon reached tremendous proportions. By 1750 from fifty to one hundred thousand slaves were being ferried across the Atlantic each year. These slaves came from all parts of Africa, so that the Negroes who reached the New World were taken from many different peoples, with different customs and languages. In America they were thrown together in a great melting pot - Mandingoes, Yorubas, ~~Mohammedans~~, ~~Benatus~~, ~~Bantus~~ of all tribes, Hottentots, Bushmen, Negroes mixed with Arabs and Europeans - Mohammedans, Christians, Heathens - and with a thousand different languages. Yet it is believed that most of the black people brought to the New World were from that stretch of the West African Coast reaching from the Senegal to the Congo. This was the area first opened up to the slave trade, and the nearest by water to the American plantations.

In a book first published in 1786, (Bryan Edwards: History of the British West Indies) a planter with long experience in handling slaves had some interesting things to say about the different kinds of black people who came into the slave market. A Mandingo slave of his, he said, told about a raid upon his village in which many people were killed, and others carried off, placed in a canoe, and taken down the river to be sold to a slave ship by members of an enemy tribe. This Mandingo and other slaves were Mohammedans, and followed their old custom of morning and evening prayers, keeping regular fast days, and speaking and writing Arabic.

Edwards said that the Fulanis, also a Mohammedan people, seemed in appearance to constitute a link between the Moors and Negroes properly so called. "They are", he said, "of a less glossy black than the Gold Coast Negroes; and their hair, though bushy and crisped, is not wooly, but soft and silky to the touch. Neither have the Mandingoes the full lips and broad noses of the more Southern natives; and they are, in great degree, not well adapted for hard labor."

The Koromantyn, or Gold Coast Negroes, according to Edwards (and this tribe is the same as the Ashantee people spoken of before), were "distinguished from all others by firmness of body and mind; a ferociousness of disposition, or what an ancient Roman would have described as an elevation of Soul, which prompts them to enterprises of difficulty and danger, and which enables them to meet Death, in its most horrible shape, with fortitude and indifference. They take to labor with great promptitude and alacrity, and have constitutions well adapted to it."

The planters liked to buy the Koromanty Negroes because of their strength and industry, but had to treat them very carefully to keep them from rebelling. Edwards says that "The Gold Coast being inhabited by various tribes which are engaged in perpetual warfare and hostility with each other, there cannot be a doubt that many of the captives taken in battle and sold in slavery were free in their own native country, and perhaps owned slaves themselves. It is not wonderful that such men should endeavor by even the most desperate means to regain the freedom of which they have been deprived."

The Angolas, from further to the South, were, said Edwards, much like the others, except "generally a slight slender ~~negro~~ race, of a deep and glossy black, and of a disposition naturally mild and docile." The Whidaws, or Pawpaws as they were called in the West Indies, were "unquestionably the most docile and best disposed slaves that are imported from any part of Africa. They were neither fierce like the Koromantys or timid like the Eboes; and they were preferred as field hands."

For three hundred years the slave trade encouraged endless wars, raids, skirmishes, kidnappings, and the most brutal force in Africa. It is little wonder that the social and economic life of the people in those regions touched by the slavers was ~~so~~ broken and scattered by the time Africa - the dark and bloody continent - came to the attention of the modern world only some seventy-five years ago.

Begin- During the whole time that Europeans - English, French, Dutch, Portuguese, ning of Spanish, Danes, and others - were carrying on the slave trade on the West European Coast of Africa, the East Coast was in touch with the energetic Arab traders Settlements and even with India. European settlements were begun at several places on the West African coast as early as 1475, when the Portuguese under Vasco de Gama and Prince Henry sent expeditions throughout the world. Christopher Columbus, before taken into the service of the Spanish queen Isabella, was a member of one of these

early expeditions to Africa.

The first main trade of the Portuguese, the Spaniards, and the English, was in spices and gold. Gold was mined on the Gold Coast - present day Nigeria - and pepper and spices were found on the Guinea Coast. Ivory, from the tusks of elephants, was also a valuable article of commerce. Spices and peppers were highly favored in Europe at that time, it is said, because with no ice or other refrigeration, these flavorings were necessary to make the food and meats palatable to the palate.

The procedure of a first European settlement would be similar to that followed in the establishment of the Dutch and English settlements on the Gold Coast. A stock company would be founded in the home country, giving one special company exclusive rights to trade in a certain area. The Company would then outfit a ship or several ships, supplying it with articles which would appeal to the natives - and guns and gunpowder (to take the place of the native bows, arrows, and spears), ~~and~~ Rum, Whiskey, and Gin, were the articles that did have most appeal. The Company ships would proceed to some favorable place on the West African Coast and set up a trading post with a fort nearby to protect the trade. Several nationalities might establish posts in the same general section. On the Gold Coast the Dutch set up a post at Elmina, and the English set one up at Accra, and another at Cape Coast Town. If a war should break out in Europe, the settlements were in danger of attack from land or sea. A native settlement usually grew up around the protecting fort, and ~~nearby~~ the fort was also the headquarters of the Company merchant who was called a factor. With the slave trade booming, several traders might also establish headquarters, with their "barracoons", in the vicinity of the fort.

The life of these early settlements was highly spiced with danger and adventure. With no knowledge of how to prevent disease, the life of a European on the African coast was a perilous existence. Few were able to escape from the fevers and the temperature, and those who did lived a life of drunkenness and dissipation. An old story from the company records has been used in a recent novel of the slave trade:

"One Taguba, a native negro woman in Cape Coast, being gotten with child by some of the Soldiers of the Castle, was brought to bed of a mulatto Girl; who growing about eleven years old, this Johnson, then a Factor at Cape Coast, had a great fancy for her, and purposed to take her for his wife; and being about that Time removed to be Chief Factor at Suddaidi, in order to make sure of this Girl, he took her there to live with him, till she was of an Age fit for conjugal embraces; using her with much tenderness, and taking great satisfaction in her company for two or three years; But when she was grown up, being a Pretty Girl, Vanhukeline, a Dutch Factor nearby, by Bribes and Presents, corrupted her mother Taguba, and persuaded her to go to Suddaidi, and under Pretence of making a visit to her Daughter, to bring her off in a swift Canoe, which he had ordered to lie under the Dutch Fort there for the Purpose. The Mother accordingly went, and having been kindly treated by Johnson, who suspected nothing, went with her Daughter to take a walk. Carried away by force to Vanhukeline; who soon cracked the Hart Johnson had been so long cooking to his own Tooth.

When Johnson being invited to dine with the Dutch General at the Elmina Fort, he saw her there, being brought in to dance before them, acting very fine, bearing the name of Madam Vanhukeline. This has quite turned his Brain, and giving himself over to Rum, is not long expected to survive...."

When slave ships arrived in the ports, a general carrousal followed, with sailors, traders, and the native African residents engaging in one big drunken spree lasting for several days. Rum and Gin were plentiful, as they ~~were~~ the chief articles of exchange for slaves.

It was not until about 1785 that Europeans began to come to Africa ~~to~~ to make it their home, rather than in the hope of carrying on trade for a few years and making enough money to go back home to live in style. Dutch farmers began to come into South Africa, where they found both a temperature and a soil that could be used for farms. There were also many English settlers in South Africa, in the vicinity of Table Bay and Cape Town.

In the period after 1800 the new ideas of human freedom which had been generated in Europe and America by the French Revolution in 1789-1793 inclined the nations of the world, increasingly, to condemn the slave trade and to ~~indiscriminately~~ seek means to suppress it. The French decreed the emancipation of slaves in the French West Indies in 1794. Beginning in 1793 with Vermont, the Northern ~~States~~ United States began the ~~abolition~~ emancipation of slaves. In 1807 England made the slave trade illegal, and in 1808 and again in 1830 the United States, Great Britain, and France agreed to use their navies to suppress the slave trade.

To understand the slave trade, we must remember that it was "big money", and that a great deal of the prosperity of England was built up on the ~~exchange of~~ three way exchange of English manufactured goods for slaves who in turn were exchanged for plantation crops - sugar, coffee, and the like - which in turn were exchanged for manufactured goods used both in the slave colonies and to buy more slaves. The ~~slave~~ slave trade, while officially suppressed by the Great Powers, went on for many years as slaves were smuggled into the United States until the emancipation of the Negroes by the Civil War, and into Brazil until the emancipation of slaves there in 1888. Meanwhile on the East Coast of Africa, the slave trade has continued almost up to the present time, as slavery ~~in its various forms~~ existed in Abyssinia until very recent years and in certain forms a market for slaves still exists in Arabia.

With the growth of Europe and America as manufacturing centers, and after the ending of the "big time" slave trade, Africa came to have a new meaning for Europeans. It became a place where raw materials - oils, fats, cotton, iron, copper - could be produced cheaply and in quantities, and carried to Europe to be manufactured into finished goods. Some sections also became prospects for the settlement of people from the crowded cities and countries of Europe.

This new interest was set off by the defeat of France in the Franco-Prussian War of 1870-1871. Blocked in Europe, the French turned to Africa to regain both their honor and their wealth. With the great German Chancellor, Bismarck, acting as a referee, a mad scramble for African colonies followed.

Missionary representatives of various churches and nations came also to Africa. The great traveller and missionary, Livingstone, attracted the attention of the world by the wide publicity given to his travels. When Henry Stanley, an American newspaper man, was given a commission by English and American newspapers to find Livingstone when he was reported lost in the Central Africa, the public desire to know more about Africa grew in intensity. The British had a head-start, but the French soon overtook and passed them, in area claimed if not in the value of the lands included in their claims.

Bismarck, on the part of Germany, was not enthusiastic concerning the values of colonies, believing that Germany's future lay in Europe. The Germans therefore got a late start and always claimed that the English had not been quite fair with them. In 1885 the German Emperor granted a charter to the Society of German Colonization, and the agent of this Society, Dr. Carl Peters, made numerous treaties with chiefs in East Africa which were the foundation of what became in 1886 German East Africa, now Tanganyika. In West Africa another great German traveller and geographer, Dr. Nachtigal, signed treaties with local chiefs in what was to become German Togoland and the German Cameroons. The Germans also established themselves to the South of Portuguese Angola. These German colonies passed under the control of the varied allied powers following the World War.

An interesting agent in the expansion of the British on the East Coast of Africa was Tippoo Tib. The Portuguese had taken over the trade of East Africa as early as 1497, following the voyages of Vasco de Gama. As an illustration of the use ~~of other names~~ ^{of other names} to designate persons who in America would unquestioningly be regarded as Negroes, Tippoo Tib is called an "Arab". His father was also an "Arab", his mother a black woman from one of the native Mohammedan tribes of Tanganyika.

Tippoo Tib was born in Zanzibar. He carried on many expeditions with his father as a slave and ivory trader, ranging up and down the East Coast of Africa and as far to the West as what is now the Belgian Congo. He founded the city of Matara in the Congo, and was practically the uncrowned king of an enormous territory. Shrewd, powerful, and dependable, Tippoo Tib became the guide and protector of Henry Stanley on his searches for David.

and in his later explorations on behalf of ~~the~~ King Leopold of the Belgians.

The Ashanti Wars tee In the course of European settlement, a number of wars ~~and~~ were waged against native states and tribes. These conflicts help show both the difficulties and the principles of conducting military operations in the tropics.

We have referred to the Ashanti people of the land inland from the Gold Coast in West Africa. Reaching the Coast in 1482, the Portuguese built two forts, one at Elmina, and another ~~in~~ at Accra. The English began to trade on the Gold Coast in 1583, in spite of the bitter hostility of the Portuguese. In 1637 the Dutch brought a large fleet from Brazil to attack the Portuguese settlements, their army including 1300 Europeans and 1400 members of the Komantia tribe. The Portuguese used the native Elminas, a part of the Fantee Confederacy. The Portuguese were defeated. The English seized the settlements from the Dutch in 1664, but the Dutch returned in the next year. As allies the English used the Komantyn tribe, under the chief John Cabes. The Komantyns, to whom reference has been made before, were of the same stock as the Ashantee. At the defeat of the English by the Dutch, Cabes committed suicide, it being the rule of the tribe that no defeated chief should survive the disgrace of a lost battle. The Dutch offered \$1000 reward for his head, that it might be set up in the Fort as a warning to other natives; but his fellow-tribesmen stole his body away at night.

During these early days the warlike natives were in constant conflict with other tribes and with the Forts. The competing European traders made no bones of selling huge quantities of guns to the natives, and while these guns were poorly made flint-locks, they did provide the Ashantee with firearms. In 1800 the Ashanti² state had grown extremely powerful, and establishing control over neighboring tribes, and enforcing a firm discipline at home. The Ashanti² required all young boys, on being admitted to manhood at the age of fifteen, to enter the regular Army. Here they remained for nine years, under the strictest discipline. These provisions made the Ashanti² an enemy to be feared throughout West Africa.

In their capital, Kumasi, the Royal Palace alone had one building used as a barracks in which one thousand warriors lived. The total population is estimated to have been over 75,000. Each ~~subordinate~~ king of the smaller states which had been subdued by the Ashanti² was required to maintain a road twelve feet wide to the Capital, and to pay annual tribute. laid

The Ashanti ~~lay~~ siege to the Coast forts in 1807, in 1834, and at all times made their names a terror to the security of traders and other persons daring to enter their territory. The British sent numerous expeditions to bring the Ashanti to reason, but these expeditions invariably failed. The English used native troops, who could not stand up to the Ashanti² in warfare; and the climate was deadly to European troops.

In 1873 the English, under Lord Wolseley, determined to bring the Ashanti to terms. They brought together an army of several thousand men, including several regiments of West Indian Negro troops, principally from Jamaica, who were thought to have immunity from the tropical fevers; and, in addition, some of the best English old regular regiments, the Black Watch among others. Timing their invasion of the Ashanti² country to avoid the rainy season, the English reached the capital city of Kumasi on February 4th, 1874. They dynamited the principal buildings of the city, arrested the King, Prempeh, and withdrew to the Coast. They found that the immense treasures of golden vessels and ornaments which the Ashanti² had in the state treasury had been hidden away, as had been the Golden Stool, the symbol of Ashanti² power.

The casualty figures of this expedition against Kumasi have been used to show that tropical warfare may be more deadly as the result of disease than of the enemy. Of course in 1873 modern scientific measures had not been learned, by which large bodies of troops unaccustomed to the Tropics might be protected. The casualty figures were:

Officers		Men	Officers		Men
Killed in action	297	2,290	Number	297	2,290
Died of wounds	4	2	Died from Disease	11	33
Severely wounded	1	10	Invalided home, sick	50	248
Slightly wounded	6	49	Died in England, disease	2	7
	21	109	Sick on ship or hospital	---	169

These figures, confirmed by the experience of the campaigns of the World War in Africa from 1914-1918, led many military authorities to propose (a) that native or acclimated troops only should be used in the areas bordering the Equator in Africa, and (b) that medical prevention and care is indispensable to the conduct of military operations under the conditions of warfare to be expected in Equatorial Africa.

Recent advances in medical knowledge have greatly modified this view; but they have strengthened the necessity for stringent health measures on the part of non-acclimated troops intended for tropical service.

The final Ashanti War broke out in 1900, when the British Governor, Sir Francis Hodgson, believing that the Ashanti were defying Royal authority by withholding from him the Golden Stool, provoked another outbreak by the people. A party of British officers and officials was trapped in the fort at Kumasi, and an expedition was hurriedly organized at the Coast for their relief. They arrived just in time.

The Golden Stool, hidden all this time, was finally discovered by accident in 1918, as a new road was being cut through the forest. A member of a secret society who was responsible for its care had buried it; and the road survey passed directly over the spot. When the guardian of the Stool saw that the Stool was about to be unearthed, he prevailed upon the workman who was digging there to leave it buried until night. He first told the workman that the box in which the Stool was laid contained a small-pox charm; but the secret was finally out, and several natives together agreed to sell the gold from the Stool and to conceal their deed. However, their guilt was discovered, and the criminals brought to trial. The Ashanti wished to put the men to death, but the British intervened and reduced the punishment to life exile from the colony. At the ~~celebration~~ Golden Jubilee of Queen Mary in 1925, the Ashanti women presented as a gift to the Queen a copy of their Golden Stool, made of silver.

CHAPTER V.

THE RECENT MILITARY HISTORY OF AFRICA

The Zulu States and the Zulu Wars - Detail of the Battle of Isandhlwana - detail of the Boer War; the Battle of Colenso - detail of the Sudan campaign and the siege of Khartoom, 1882-1884 - detail of the Italo-Abyssinian campaign of 1896 and the Battle of Adoua - The First World War: East African campaign, with detail showing von Lettow's retreat in Tanganyika - the recent Libyan campaign - the significance of Dakar

THE RECENT MILITARY HISTORY OF AFRICA

The Zulu States and the Zulu Wars - Detail of the Battle of Isandhlwana - detail of the Boer War; the Battle of Colenso - detail of the Sudan campaign and the siege of Khartoom, 1882-1884 - detail of the Italo-Abyssinian campaign of 1896 and the Battle of Adoua - The First World War: East African campaign, with detail showing von Lettow's retreat in Tanganyika - the recent Libyan campaign - the significance of Dakar

Zulu State: In South Africa the Dutch settled in great numbers as farmers, while the
Battle of colony was governed by the British. The Dutch were called Boers; the
Isandhlwana. religious and social differences they had with the British remained
a constant source of irritation and trouble.

The Dutch, therefore, early tried to move as far from British zones of control as possible. They led great "treks" into the back country from Cape Town, ~~xxxx~~ where they found great stretches of land well fitted to farming operations. They met also, however, a number of well organized tribes who bitterly contested with the Boers the right to settlement, and to the land. These peoples, of the Bantu stock, belonged to the Zulu, the Barotse, the Basuto, and other tribes. They were a cattle raising people, and required large ranges for their cattle. Here as elsewhere in Africa Cattle were not only valued for the food, but also as symbols of wealth, power, and prestige, and as a medium of exchange.

The conflicts with the Dutch settlers were much like those which took place in early colonial days between the Indians and the Americans who forged into the West. There was one important difference. The Bantu tribes of South Africa, especially the Zulus, had a much stronger military and social organization than did the Indians of the West. They were also far more numerous.

In the year 1816 a great chief, Chaka (Tshaka) became the head of the Zulu people, succeeding Dingiswayo. Chaka immediately began the organization of an Army with the harshest discipline known to military history, with the possible exception of the ancient Spartans. Boys were required to enter the Zulu Army at the age of sixteen, and they were not permitted to leave for marriage until they were twenty-eight. Each boy, on entering the Army, was assigned to a regiment which lived in its own separate barracks. The soldiers of this army were armed with large shields made of ox-hide, and with short spears called "assegais" that were also used as clubs.

Chaka ruled in a most tyrannical manner, and he required the soldiers of his Army to execute all commands without question. It is said that on one occasion he ordered a regiment to advance in the direction of a high cliff. The men knew that the order meant death - death if they disobeyed, death if they obeyed - and unquestioningly marched forward. Several hundred men were dashed to their death at the foot

of the cliff before

counter-manded the order.

A soldier who returned to report the failure of a mission was instantly executed. There was great competition for promotion, as the King liberally rewarded those who won his confidence. With Chaka leading, the Zulus made themselves the terror of the entire Southeast of Africa, driving ^{other tribes} northward as far as Lake Nyasa, into the Kalahari desert, and literally into the ocean.

Chaka met ~~his death~~ a violent death in 1828. His successor, Dingaan, continued to harass the Boer settlers. The Dutch used Hottentot soldiers as auxiliaries. In 1838 Dingaan's army was defeated in the Battle of Blood River. The bodies of three thousand Zulus were left on the field. Since that time the date of the Blood River battle has been celebrated as the great Boer holiday. Dingaan himself died in 1840.

The next forty years were marked by an endless series of wars, ~~raids, and~~ and raids between the Boer settlers and the Bantu tribes, and between the British and these tribes. The Boers continued to push to the North, and the natives were confined more and more to small areas called "reserves", or pushed into the North and West.

Isandhlwana Cetewayo was the second Zulu king to succeed the great Chaka. He revived the discipline of the Zulu regiments, and under him fresh outbreaks occurred. In January, 1879, a force of 54 British officers, 808 soldiers, with 300 native troops was sent to attack him. It was known that the Zulus were in great force, and in a skirmish on the 20th of January ~~Prince Jerome Bonaparte~~ Prince Jerome Bonaparte had carelessly ridden away from camp and been killed by Zulus. Jerome was the heir to the deposed Louis Napoleon of France.

The British had camped for the night on a high hill, with their tents encircling the transport in the center. They had seven small field guns and three ~~Congreve~~ Congreve rocket guns. Operating on the same principle as modern rocket guns recently seen in action in the Russian, 1942 campaign, these rocket guns had been in use in European armies since Napoleon's day. General Packenham, who commanded the British troops at the Battle of New Orleans in 1816, was equipped with rocket guns. The use of these guns had gradually been given up as rifled cannons were improved, but they were greatly favored for action against uncivilized warriors because of the terror they were supposed to cause in the ranks. ~~and~~

On the morning of January 22nd, quite by accident, a detachment of the British force ~~made~~ made contact with a small force of Zulus. The main army of the Zulus was three miles away, and under the command of a lieutenant of Cetewayo, ^{Tshingwayo} ~~Tshingwayo~~. The Zulus said later that they had no intention of attacking the British until they heard firing in the distance. The Zulus were superstitious about fighting when the "moon was ~~dry~~ wet", and the "moon was wet" on January 22nd. Tshingwayo had 13,000 men in three bodies. On the right he had three regiments totalling 5000 men; two regiments in the center, of 4500 men; and two regiments with 3,700 men on the left.

Tshingwayo ordered two regiments on the left to form a circle and remain in reserve. He later used this reserve to cut off the road to escape when he saw the British were doomed. The usual tactics of the Zulu was to encircle; to advance in the form of a U, or, as they put it, an ox-horn, and to make the horns meet behind the enemy. This crude version of a "pincers" movement was executed with utter indifference to the heavy rifle and artillery fire of the British. The Zulu right came down the valley at the back of Isandhlwana hill, with the central mass and the left aimed directly at the camp on the hill.

This affair was an African version of Custer's last stand. It also illustrated another military principle of value. Had the British brought the full force of their fire into action from a well-considered defense line closer to the camp, they might have survived. Realizing that they had under-estimated both the numbers and force of the enemy, they sought to retreat to the camp and reform; but this was a deadly mistake, as in withdrawing the hordes of Zulus simply flowed in upon and over them.

The British finally broke for the river at the back of the Hill, but here they found the two reserve regiments which Tshingwayo had detached in anticipation of such a retreat. Many men were killed at the very edge of the river, and only two officers and one man was ~~fortunate~~ able to escape alive from this disaster.

The Zulus plundered the transport, and withdrew. They had won a bloody victory,

and demonstrated the age-old military lesson that a mass of disciplined, fanatic soldiery, fighting even with inadequate arms, could utterly destroy the best armed modern detachment - by the sheer exercise of courage, and by the mistakes made by the victims.

The Boer War and Colenso The Boers continued to push to the North in the hope of making themselves independent of the British. They set up two short-lived republics, the Republic of the Transvaal and the Orange Free State. There remained constant friction with the English over many matters. The Boer and British native policy differed. The discovery of Gold and Diamonds in Boer territory set the British intent on having complete control of this rich territory. These irritations led to raids and border clashes between Boer and British, and in the final outbreak of War between the Boer Republics and the British in October, 1899.

A British garrison of ten thousand men at Ladysmith was cut off from the coast by the Boers. The British sent an army under General Buller to relieve the Ladysmith garrison. The Boers stood between the relief force and the besieged garrison at Colenso, on the North bank of the Tugela River.

The account of this action by the German General staff is exhaustive and instructive. It is interesting to us both as a stark battle in a decisive struggle for colonial power, and as a well-documented battle. Native troops played no part except as transport units.

The theatre of operations in the South African struggle was strange to Europeans. There were endless plains, bare, rugged mountains, a scarcity of water, a sparsely settled population. The difference between a European terrain made it difficult to estimate gradations in distance. As the seasons were reversed, the hot weather, including the rainy season, was from October to March, and the cold, dry season began in April. The great differences in temperature between day and night made troop movements advisable at night, as the days were too hot. During the rainy season the soil became a universal swamp. There were no roads, and the railroads were narrow gauge.

The Boers were born almost with a rifle in their hands, and were expert shots. They were accustomed to fighting a guerrilla warfare with the natives, and never hesitated to live to fight again, rather than to indulge in a heroic last stand. The Boers, like the Zulus, practiced the art of encircling the enemy without exposing themselves. In contrast to the sad experience of the British at Isandhlwana, the Boers on December 16, 1838 had repulsed an attack by 10,000 Zulus, who lost 3000 men, with casualties of only four men wounded to themselves.

The German General Staff pointed out, in describing the battle of Colenso, that the British were not always trained in the tactics of their enemies. One reason being because the British had to fight on varied fronts where each enemy had a different method: Europe, India, where their Afghan enemies fought always from cover, the Sudan, where the troops of the Mahdi were fanatics who saw salvation in the use of cold steel, and where close order was necessary at all times. The British, thought the Germans, had always had an exaggerated preference for shock tactics; and they were handicapped in training by lack of space for widespread manoeuvres in their home land. Because their recent troubles with the Mahdi in the Sudan had taught them these hordes could not stand up under rapid artillery fire, the British taught short-range artillery fire practice.

Facing the Boers at the Colenso river crossing, Buller proposed to turn the Boer flank by reaching the Tugela at Potgieter's Drift, and crossing the river there. He communicated with General White in Ladysmith by heliograph, telling him he planned to attack on the 17th of December. White prepared to cooperate. naval

Buller ordered Barton's artillery brigade, with 2 two x 4.7 inch guns and six 12 pounders to advance early on December 12 to Chieveley, where they were to take up a position four miles from Colenso, and cover the advance. Buller changed his mind on the 11th, abandoning his plan to march toward his left; but he did not cancel his orders to Barton. Why? His troops were suffering from sickness, and, underestimating the Boers, he may have thought that all he had to do to force a crossing was to make a show. The naval guns opened fire; the range was long, and the effect could not be observed. If the British had occupied Hlangwane Hill on their

they could have done so, for the Hill obviously commanded the entire field. The British had time to occupy the hill, but the Boers finally did before the British thought of it.

The Tugela River in front of the Boer positions was usually 200 yards wide, and 20 feet deep. The banks were 18 to 25 feet in height; but there were two fords situated two and three miles above Colenso. However, due to the summer heat the river was only 50 yards wide and nowhere more than six feet deep.

The British continued their artillery fire on the 12th, 13th, and 14th. They had no intelligence except the very doubtful reports of native spys. The Boers made no reply to the fire; on the 14th Buller, concluding that the Boers were weak, decided to make a frontal assault.

Buller's General Orders were for the mounted troops with a battery to advance on Hlangwane Hill, the River to be crossed by one brigade on the left wing, and by another at Colenso, while two brigades were to remain in the center as a reserve. Once on Hlangwane Hill, the 1000 mounted men and the battery detached were to enfilade the kopjes (hills) north of the river. Buller ordered the 2nd brigade of field artillery to follow the 4th brigade and to enfilade the enemy positions north of the bridge. The first brigade of field artillery was to proceed east of the railway to prepare a crossing for the 2nd brigade.

While the British, with faulty reconnaissance, were making these dispositions, General Botha for the Boers was also preparing. He had 6000 men behind the Tugela, with 800 at Springfield and 800 at Weenen. He gave strict instructions that the men were not to reply to the British fire. He placed 800 men quietly on Hlangwane Hill. He made no effort to dam the river or to place wire before his lines; he depended on the accurate rifle fire of which he knew his Boers to be capable. He placed 2000 men at Robinson's farm, 2000 to the east of Colenso, and had 1500 riflemen stationed to defend the Colenso bridge. On the east slope of the Red Hill he had concealed a 4.7 inch howitzer and one on either side of the road to Colenso. He had one field gun placed judiciously on the low hill before Doorkop Spruit, and another 2,200 yards North of Colenso bridge. Botha probably had precise information regarding Buller's plans for a frontal assault, hence his lack of a reserve. He ordered his men to hold their fire until the British started crossing the river.

On account of the silence of the Boers when the naval guns opened, Buller concluded that the Boers had been quashed. ~~The~~ ^{They} were then advanced and unlimbered only 600 yards from the river. The Boers opened fire with telling effect. The native drivers fled, and the ammunition gave out. The men were withdrawn, and Buller insisted also that the guns be withdrawn. Heavy losses were encountered in this effort.

The force detached to occupy Hlangwane Hill was repulsed with severe losses. Losing men rapidly everywhere, at 9:30, only three and a half hours after the battle had actually started, Buller decided to withdraw. His action was criticized because he might have waited ~~until nightfall~~ until nightfall, when with both cover and coolness the men could have taken position to storm Hlangwane Hill, the key to the field. The withdrawal in the face of a sharp shooting enemy was deadly, suggesting that in some cases it is better to stand and suffer with cover than to withdraw prematurely. The British lost 71 officers and 1055 men, less than 8% of their effectives. The Boers lost 6 killed and 21 wounded. It was also said that when Buller discovered his fatal mistake of ~~having~~ underestimated the Boers, he lost his head over the plight of his naval guns and thrusting the battery commander aside, "was no longer the leader, but merely a fellow combatant; no longer the general, but only a battery commander. Nobody was near him to explain that to hold out is easier than to go back under hostile fire....." He was wounded himself, and almost in panic telegraphed General White at Ladysmith to burn his stores and to give up. In the judgment of critics of this action, Buller could have yet won the day if he had waited for the hot mid-day to pass, if he had held his ground, brought up his reserve, occupied Hlangwane Hill in force in the evening or the next morning, and taken his losses as the price for victory.

The Boers fought bravely, but the odds were too great; and after running along for another two years, ^{the way} came to an end in 1902 with the surrender of what was then left of their armies.

In an effort to solve the problem of Boer-English relations, the English and Dutch settlements in South Africa were brought together in 1907 as the Union of South Africa.

While the age-old differences between English and Boer are still present, much unity has been wrought by the natural interests of the country. During the World War both Botha and Smuts, ~~South African~~ veterans of the Boer War, took commands under the British, against the Germans.

"Angels" - Angels
 Khartoum The Sudan Campaign to suppress the Mahdi began in 1879 and was not ended for fifteen years. This campaign illustrates the stubborn nature of conflicts in which religious fanatics take arms even against well organized armed forces. It gives also a picture of the mixed nature of the peoples of the Eastern Sudan region of Africa, for it was in this peculiar mixture that the movement of the Mahdi flourished.

In the region of the Upper Nile is to be found almost every variety of races who ever set foot in Africa. Over the centuries they have been the victims of many wars, invasions, and migrations, both by new and warlike races, and by different religious groups.

In the year 1879 a young Mohammedan began to preach to the people of the Sudan. He belonged to a sect of the Mohammedan faith, which believed that there ~~was~~ had been twelve figures similar to the idea of the Archangels in Christian belief. Like the belief of the Jews in the coming of a Messiah, the Senussi sect believed that the 12th Imam - *the* appearance of the holy and sainted saviour of the world - would sometime happen, and that his name should be the Mahdi. Mohammed Ahmed, the young preacher, declared that it had been revealed to him that he was the Twelfth Imam, the Mahdi himself.

In preaching to the mixed ~~Negro~~ Arab and Negro Mohammedan tribes of the Sudan, all of them fiercely devoted to their faith and accustomed to war, the Mahdi proclaimed that English bullets could not harm a true believer. If, through lack of faith, a soldier was killed ~~injured~~ by a bullet, ~~and immediately he would~~ he would immediately be taken up to Heaven where he would be given one of the highest places in the midst of the Angels. Unlike the Christian Heaven, where the blessed are promised milk and honey and eternal peace and quiet happiness, the disciples of the Mahdi were promised the richest of foods, the fairest of women, the sweetest of drinks.

Slowly the Mahdi began to make headway; then his preaching began to spread like wildfire. The warlike tribes of the Sudan began to rise, one after the other. General Gordon had won distinction in the Sudan a few years before by putting down the slave trade. He had been withdrawn in the same year, 1879, that the Mahdi appeared. The Egyptian soldiery failed entirely to stem the uprising of the Mahdi. Gordon was recalled to the Sudan in 1884. He went to Khartoum, the key outpost of the British in the Sudan, situated at the place where the Blue and the White branches of the Nile joined to form the greater river.

All supplies for Khartoum and the campaign had to be brought up the Nile. The followers of the Mahdi erected forts at narrow places along the river, making it extremely difficult for ships to pass. The Egyptian and British garrisons placed in the key spots throughout the Sudan began to fall one after another, and Khartoum itself was besieged. The Mahdi by now had assembled thousands of fanatic followers from the Negro and Negroid-Arab tribes of the Sudan.

Gordon made several sorties to relieve the pressure upon him. On the 4th of September, 1884 his trusted lieutenant, Mohammed Pasha, suffered a crushing defeat at El Elafin, 20 miles south of Khartoum. It was said that in defeat and death the Pasha followed an old Arab custom; he "died on his fur". That is, he took a sheepskin off his saddle when surrounded and stood and fought on it until he died. On September 10th Gordon dispatched a boat down the river with messengers requesting aid. The boat was wrecked and the messengers put to death. The food supplies in Khartoum began to fail. Gordon sent all of the women and children out of the city, and began the rationing of food. He was finally reduced to the dogs, asses, and other animals still alive in the city. Gordon used all kinds of devices to keep the spirits of his army up. He had fictitious letters written and "slipped" into the city, stating that help was on the way. He had printed clippings supposed to be from Cairo newspapers, saying that help had left there for Khartoum; and these he spread in the streets where they could be picked up.

Help was on the way, but it came too late. Learning of the finished condition of the soldiers, the armies of the Mahdi broke into the city on January 22nd. Gordon was killed and the town destroyed. Two days later the relieving force arrived.

The great courage of the blacks in the Sudan campaign and their carelessness of death

"FUZZY-WUZZY"

(Soudan Expeditionary Force)

We've fought with many men acrost the seas,
An' some of 'em was brave an' some was not:
The Paythan an' the Zulu an' Burmese;
But the Fuzzy was the finest o' the lot.
We never got a ha'porth's change of 'im:
'E squatted in the scrub an' 'ocked our 'orses,
'E cut our sentries up at Suakim,
An' 'e played the cat an' banjo with our forces,
So 'ere's to you, Fuzzy-Wuzzy, at your 'ome in the Soudan;
You're a pore benighted 'eathen but a first-class fightin' man;
We gives you your certificate, an' if you want it signed
We'll come an' 'ave a romp with you whenever you're inclined.

We took our chanst among the Kyber 'ills,
The Boers knocked us silly at a mile,
The Burman give us Irriwaddy chills,
An' a Zulu impi dished us up in style:
But all we ever got from such as they
Was pop to what the Fuzzy made us swaller;
We 'eld our bloomin' own, the papers say,
But man for man the Fuzzy knocked us 'oller.
Then 'ere's to you, Fuzzy-Wuzzy, an' the missis and the kid;
Our orders was to break you, an' of course we went an' did.
We sloshed you with Martinis, an' it wasn't 'ardly fair;
But for all the odds agin' you, Fuzzy-Wuz, you broke the square.

'E 'asn't got no papers of 'is own,
'E 'asn't got no medals nor rewards,
So we must certify the skill 'e's shown,
In usin' of 'is long two-'anded swords:
When 'e's 'oppin' in an' out among the bush
With 'is coffin-'eaded shield an' shovel-spear,
An' 'appy day with Fuzzy on the rush
Will last an' 'ealthy Tommy for a year.
So 'ere's to you, Fuzzy-Wuzzy, an' your friends which are no more,
If we 'adn't lost some messmates we would 'elp you to deplore.
But give an' take's the gospel, an' we'll call the bargain fair,
For if you 'ave lost more than us. You crumpled up the square!

'E rushes at the smoke when we let drive,
An', before we know, 'e's 'ackin' at our 'ead;
'E's all 'ot sand an' ginger when alive,
An' 'e's generally shammin' when 'e's dead.
'E's a daisy, 'e's a ducky, 'e's a lamb!
'e's a injia-rubber idiot on the spree,
'E's the on'y thing that doesn't give a damn
For a Regiment o' British Infantee!
So 'ere's to you, Fuzzy-Wuzzy, at your 'ome in the Soudan;
You're a pore benighted 'eathen but a first-class fightin' man;
An' 'ere's to you, Fuzzy-Wuzzy, with your 'ayrick 'ead of 'air --
You big black boundin' beggar -- for you broke a British square!

-- Rudyard Kipling.

won praise from the British. The poet Kipling wrote a poem, "Fuzzy-Wuzzy", in which he described the reckless charges of these men against a ~~main~~ square of British soldiers. The Sudanese wore their hair in thick masses, hence the ~~title~~ nickname given them by their British "Tommys". The Sudanese charged in closed ranks, with the greatest disregard of the effect of rifle ~~fire~~ and artillery fire at close range. The British adopted the ~~main~~ square as their only defense against these attacks, which would come from any side and in mass.

Wrote Kipling,

We've fought with many men across the seas,
And some of 'em was brave an' some was not;
The Pathan an' the Zulu an' Burmese;
But the Fuzzy was the finest of the lot.
We never got a ha'porth's change of 'im;
'E squatted in the scrub an' 'coked our 'orses,
'E cut our sentries up at Suakin,
An' 'e played the cat and tanjo with our forces.
So 'ere's to you, Fuzzy-Wuzzy, at your 'ome in the
Soudan;
You're a pore benighted 'eathen but a first-class fightin'
man;
We gives you your certificate, an' if you want it signed
We'll come an' 'ave a romp with you whenever you're inclined.

'E rushes at the smoke when we let drive,
An', before we know, 'e's 'ackin' at our 'ead;
'E's all 'ot sand an' ginger when alive,
An' 'e's generally shammin' when 'e's dead.
'E's a daisy, 'e's a ducky, 'e's a lamb!
'E's a injia-rubber idiot on the spree,
'E's the on'y thing that doesn't give a damn
For a Regiment of British Infan-tree!
So 'ere's to you, Fuzzy-Wuzzy, at your 'ome in the Soudan;
You're a pore benighted 'eathen but a first class fightin' man;
And 'ere's to you, Fuzzy-Wuzzy, with your 'ayrick 'ead of 'aire-

You big black boundin' beggar - for you broke a British square!

The Mahdi died on June 22nd, 1885, poisoned, it was said, by a woman whose husband he had executed and whose property he had taken. The revolt did not die with him; it took years of hard fighting, under the direction of the famed Lord Kitchener of Khartoum, to bring the Sudanese tribes back into peaceful relations with the British.

Italo-
Abyssinian
War, 1895-1896,
and the Battle of
Adowa

In the rush of European countries to get colonies in Africa, the Italians felt they had been caught napping. One reason was that it was not until 1860 that Italy was unified. Coming late to the table of the great powers in their expansion, the Italians were able only to grab what they scornfully called a "strip of desert" in North Africa - Libya - and two other similar strips in East Africa bordering the mouth of the Red Sea - Eritrea and Somaliland.

Since these two latter strips, however, with the French holding the port of Djibouti, completely blocked Abyssinia off from the sea, it was natural for the Italians to look with longing eyes at the great and valuable territory occupied by this African people.

The Abyssinians are a mixed people. Long years of invasions and counter-invasion show clear evidence of the presence of Negro blood in quantities, Hamitic strains, and Semitic strains, with the ruling families more semitic than the lower classes.

Considering the fact that "Negroes" in Abyssinia some quarters are not always highly regarded, there has been some hesitation to classify the Abyssinians as "Negroes". Here we may apply our old rule; judged by the concept of race in America, they are indisputably Negroes. In the technical sense in which, as we have pointed out, only a few of the black people in Africa would be classified as "Negroes", the Abyssinians are not "Negroes"; we should classify them as mixed Semites-Hamites. However, as with the rest of Africa the Abyssinians have not been greatly bothered by these distinctions in the past. The custom of taking auxiliary wives and concubines from all races, and regarding the children of these unions as legal inheritors, even when the mother has been a slave, has been widespread in Abyssinia and, indeed, everywhere in Africa. The photographs of some Abyssinians show distinct differences in the shape of the nose and the mouth as compared to other Africans; while the photographs of others, including Taitou, the wife of the great Emperor Menelik, look to be perfect Negro types.

Menelik became Emperor of Abyssinia in 1889. A treaty which the Italians made with him in that year was interpreted by the Italians as meaning that they had been given the right to "protect" Abyssinia. Menelik disagreed. As a result, the Italians in 1896 sent 14,000 men into Abyssinia from their bases in Eritrea to enforce their claims. The Abyssinians under Menelik assembled an army of 120,000 men. They were poorly disciplined, badly armed, but they had great pride and courage. The Italian Army included some 22,000 Italian troops and 20,000 "Askari", or black native troops from the Galla tribes of Eritrea.

The Italians advanced in three columns. The basis of General Baratieri's troubles was his supply problem, as well as his faulty reconnaissance. One advanced column pushed forward to Makale had been surrounded and surrendered. Baratieri, supremely confident, ordered this army to advance. In 1888 the British had pushed a much smaller army into Abyssinia and humiliated the people; and Baratieri and other Europeans thought that the conquest of Abyssinia would be easy.

They reckoned without Menelik. ~~Menelik~~ He ordered Mengasha, the sub-king of the province of Tigre, to advance, while he assembled ~~thirty~~ ^{one hundred} thousand men to join Mengasha's twenty thousand. Informed at last that the Abyssinians planned to attack, General Baratieri decided to occupy a ridge of hills standing between him and the city of Adoua, twenty miles away. He planned to await the Abyssinian attack there. In his general orders to the commanders of his three columns, Baratieri had referred to three hills, - Mount Belah, a hill called the Spur, and a hill Baratieri called Kidaue Meret. His maps were inaccurate, however, ~~the~~ and Kidaue Meret was actually miles away from the first two named.

The columns started by night to avoid the heat of the day. In the darkness they lost touch with each other. ~~Inspecting~~ General Albertone was in command of the column instructed to occupy the hill Kidaue Meret. He arrived at the hill intended, but not properly named, by Baratieri, early in the morning. Inspecting the two other ridges, he saw no Italians there, and inquired of natives the location of the hill Kidaue Meret. He was correctly informed that Kidaue Meret was several miles away.

Although Albertone was in the right place, this information decided him to take up the march again and to occupy Kidaue Meret as he had been ordered to do.

When the morning mists had completely rolled away, Albertone found himself on Kidaue Meret, indeed; but ten miles away from the other two columns. He was not only in front of the Abyssinian attack, but he had also exposed the other two columns of the center and the right.

Within two hours each column was surrounded by the Abyssinians who flowed between the hills in endless swarms. Albertone's brigade was lost entirely. Baratieri ordered a retreat, which was almost impossible. They formed squares to withstand the close-packed assaults of the Abyssinians, who charged recklessly in order to come to cold steel. The squares were swallowed up.

Altogether the Italians lost twelve thousand of their ~~home~~ ^{land} troops and most of the Askaris. They inflicted terrible losses on the enemy, but the disaster could not be repaired. Italy lost great prestige in the world, and the Abyssinians gained respect and also an unwholesome pride in their military might - a pride that was to serve them poorly forty years later when a rearmed, mechanized Italian Army, this time aided by aircraft, was to demonstrate that bravery and pride are not enough in modern

Italo- On October 3, 1935, Italian forces invaded Abyssinia. This invasion was the Abyssinian outcome of a series of border clashes which gave full warning of what was to come. Haile Selassie, Emperor of Abyssinia, had protested vigorously to the League of Nations. According to League Law, Great Britain and other nations "invoked sanctions" - agreed not to sell vital war materials to Italy. This agreement gave no help to the Abyssinians, because Italy was able to obtain ample help both from the countries which were not members of the League of Nations, and some who were.

As compared to the ill-fated campaign of 1896, the Italians in their 1935-1936 campaign showed they had learned ~~not~~ not to make the mistakes of the past, and that they had mastered the principles of modern mechanized war. It is true that the Abyssinians were poorly trained and poorly equipped; but the Italians must be credited for mastering great physical difficulties even if they had no opposition whatever. The war was the first to show the place motorized services of supply and aircraft reconnaissance might play. The Abyssinians had less than a dozen "crates" in their airforce, useful only for courier service. They had practically no anti-aircraft. The Italian bombing command strafed and bombed the Abyssinians into annihilation in short order. The Italian service of supply was organized to permit each invading column to be independent of aid for thirty days after leaving the supply depots. The engineers performed wonders in road ~~making~~ and bridge building over terrain which the Abyssinians had depended upon as impassable.

Amba-Aradam

The battles of ~~Makale~~ Makale and Dessie sealed the fate of the Abyssinians. Their European advisers, mostly Swedish, had tried to build an officer corps that would change from the old Abyssinian ~~mass~~ faith in mass assault and fierce courage. They had pointed out that the great masses of soldiers which had been used by Menelik in 1896 could not possibly be fed and kept together for a long campaign. They saw also that the only hope of the Abyssinians was to fight a withdrawing action, harassing the Italians as they extended their lines into the back country, until the rains hopelessly mired

This advice proved fruitless. The sub-kings and chieftains, at the first (them, news that War had broken, assembled their huge forces as before, and pushed toward the frontier. Meanwhile the Italians, already poised in strength on the frontier, moved into the country with all of the speed of a mechanized column, with the bombers going ahead. On October 3rd, Adowa was bombed; it was taken on the 6th of October. The Italians reached Axum, the Holy City of the Abyssinians, on the October 14. On November 4th they came to Amba Aradam, where the Abyssinians under Ras Mulugheta had established themselves to block the further progress of the Italians to the South.

Amba Aradam is a mountainous mass ten miles to the south of Makale. The mountain rises to a height of 6000 feet and has numerous caves and fissures that provide good cover from artillery fire and from air attack. The Abyssinians had two batteries of 75's and a few machine guns. Against this the Italians had all of the equipment of a modern motorized army, including ~~fifty~~ one hundred and fifty light bombers. Marshal Badoglio commanded the Italian Army.

Instead of attacking Amba Aradam frontally, the Italians began a flanking movement, going around the mountain. According to their custom, the Abyssinians made many courageous but entirely fruitless frontal charges; the Italians had managed to bring up their artillery in spite of torrents of rain. In an effort to meet the Italian flank movement, the Abyssinians over-extended their own lines, and found themselves in terrain where enemy air strafing and machine guns decimated them. Finally obliged to retreat, the Abyssinians suffered terrible losses from repeated air attacks. In this battle the Abyssinians lost more than 25% of their effectives, or between 35 to 45 thousand men; the Italian loss was 200 killed and 600 wounded, or one percent of an army of 80 thousand men.

In the Spring, after a brief pause for consolidating their positions, the Italians started the big push for Addis Ababa, the Abyssinian capital; with Badoglio advancing from the North and Graziani from the South with Somaliland as a base. Native Galla tribesmen proved to be invaluable black allies of the Italians; the brunt of the infantry attacks were borne by the Askari (native) troops. Dessie was taken on April 15th, and on May 25 the Emperor Haile Selassie fled Addis Ababa for Djibuti, from which he escaped on board a British cruiser. A few bands continued to offer resistance in the mountains and held out until the British re-entered Abyssinia in 1939 after the beginning of War in Europe.

Von Lettow's Campaign in East Africa, 1914-1919

One of the classic campaigns of history was that which followed when the British and their allies began the reduction of the German forces in German East Africa. In other German colonies resistance collapsed in short order as the blockade cut them off from the homeland; but in East Africa General von Lettow made successful resistance and actually surrendered after the Armistice had been signed in Europe. The campaign has been called the "Black Man's War", for before it was over black troops were the backbone of each army, and neither side would have been able to operate had it not been for the black carriers who transported the materials of war.

German East Africa was twice the size of Texas. In it were mountains higher than any in the American Rockies, forests, deserts, jungles, plains and swamps infested with mosquitoes and tsetse flies. On the West the Great Lakes and mountain ranges partially protected the territory where it joined the Belgian Congo and Nyasaland. On the North it was separated from the British Kenya colony by mountains, one, Kilimanjaro, rising to 19,700 feet, and, although ~~xxx~~ almost on the Equator, snow-covered. The central area is an irregular plain, and to the South ^{above} dense forests and arid plains.

General (first Colonel) Paul von Lettow-Vorbeck was in command of the German military when war broke. He had already made careful preparations; the location of the colony made it a valuable base of operations for German raiders in the Pacific and Indian oceans. He had at first 4900 soldiers, of whom only 1200 were German. He had also a large reserve of natives. To oppose this force the British had in Kenya three battallions of the King's African Rifles.

Von Lettow had throughout the war ~~xxx~~ an excellent espionage system. His first move was to obtain information regarding troop and materials movement on the Mombasa-Uganda railroad, which he raided with disastrous frequency. The British sent to India for reinforcements, and with their arrival planned to send one column to capture the Kilimanjaro heights, with another to capture the port of Tanga, and with a third to encircle Taveta. Kilimanjaro was a buttress for the German lines because the area from there to the coast was swampy and, with malaria and tsetse, deadly to troops.

Learning of the British plans, von Lettow was on hand when the British landed from the sea at Ras Kasone, two miles east of Tanga. He repulsed them with great loss. Meanwhile von Lettow obtained needed artillery assistance. The German cruiser Konigsberg had been stationed at Dar-es-Salaam when war broke. In one raid she sank the British cruiser Pegasus at Zanzibar; but a superior British force drove her, shortly afterward, into the Rufiji river, where she was sunk. The Germans were able, however, to take her guns off.

The year 1915 passed with the British making preparations for the grand effort to crush von Lettow. He continued to raid the Uganda railroad and make life miserable for the British in Kenya. The new plan of the Allies was for the British to invade German territory from three sides at the same time - from Kenya in the North, from the Belgian Congo in the West, and from Rhodesia on the Southwest. The German commander, unable to get reinforcements, began to recruit and train native troops. By February, 1916, his original 4900 had grown to 20,000. The Germans also ran the British blockade to Manisa Bay near Tanga early in 1915 with a shipload of munitions. The British did catch the ship off-shore, and shelled her severely. The German crew abandoned her and the British boarded; but after inspection they concluded the ship was a total loss and left her sinking, as they thought. The Germans came back and beached the ship, and recovered almost her entire cargo. This included precious rifles and ammunition which von Lettow needed badly for his black army. ~~Further details concerning the campaign in 1916~~

The British brought in more extra men from India and France. The Belgians and Rhodesians declared themselves ready. South Africa sent an infantry brigade, a mounted brigade, several batteries of artillery, a mixed brigade, and a battalion of colored troops from ~~the~~ Cape Town. This concentration and triple-attack, it was hoped, would soon crush von Lettow and save the expense of a long-drawn out Guerilla war.

General Smuts, formerly a commander of the Boers in the war with the British, 1899-1902, was put in command of the allied forces early in 1916. He planned to drive

von Lettow into a pocket, with Smuts' main Army passing from Voi in Kenya through the mountain gap between Kilimanjaro and the swamps. Once past the great slopes, he intended to split his army into two columns; one to follow the western plateau to the railroad, the other to turn southeastward to Tanga.

The first battle in this campaign, fought on March 11, 1916, foretold what was to be routine for the next two years and a half years; the Allies attacking in greater force; von Lettow resisting strongly and inflicting heavy casualties; von Lettow skilfully getting out of the trap to take up new positions; attack, resistance, heavy losses, retreat, attack, resistance, heavy losses, retreat.

On March 11 Smuts attacked the German position west of Taveta. The main road to it, between Himo and Kahe, ran in a defile between two hills, amidst the thickest bush. von Lettow's ~~first~~ second in command, Major Kraut, held both hills. The battle was the fiercest ever fought to that time in Africa, with artillery, rifle, and finally bayonets brought into play. Early on the morning of the 12th von Lettow, learning that Kraut was being flanked, ordered his withdrawal. On March 18 von Lettow took up new positions running from northwest to southeast, from the end of the Pare Hills across the Tanga-Moshi railway, with his right resting in a region of forest, bush, rivers and bogs.

The Allies sent one force under General Sheppard to attack frontally, and another ~~one~~ under General Van Deventer was sent to turn the German rear at Kahe. Von Lettow fell back to Lambeni, twenty miles south of Kahe. By March 21 the Allies had "opened the front door to East Africa"; and the Germans found themselves without ammunition. Just at this ~~same~~ time another blockade runner ~~came into port at Sudi Bay, near Lindi.~~ This was the Maria, which had slipped through the British blockade in the North Atlantic, come unobserved through the South Atlantic around the Horn into the South Pacific, passed ~~thence~~ around Australia into the Indian Ocean, and completed a trip almost around the World through waters watched night and day. The cargo of the Maria included ammunition for the big guns of the Koenigsberg, five million rounds for rifles, and a dozen machine guns.

Thus rearmed, von Lettow furnished his army, now almost entirely black, with new supplies and energy. Now that he was in Tanganyika, General Smuts decided to corner von Lettow in the square below Usambara. The four sides were to be "stitched" by (1) Van Deventer moving from Arushu south to the Tabora railway; (2), Smuts coming down the coast to Morogoro; (3) the Belgians coming in from the Congo, and (4) the Rhodesians coming in from the Southwest.

This sound plan was ruined (a) by heavy rains, forcing long halts to bring up supplies; (b) the onset of malaria, which killed or hospitalized most of Smuts' European ~~troops~~ and Indian troops; (c) the tsetse flies which almost exterminated the horses upon which Smuts depended for transport. Deventer made a brilliant forced march of 200 miles to Kondoa by April 19th, where he was obliged to stop by malaria and the rain. The Belgians came in, but reached only to Kigoma, a port on Lake Tanganyika. Smuts found the country a vast swamp. He started South on May 18, and by relentless marches he managed to outflank Kraut. By June 15 Usambara was in the hands of the Allies; but Kraut was gone - hiding himself and his army in the Nguru hills.

Reflecting on the great hardships and the high mortality experienced by his troops, and observing the success of the Germans with native soldiers, Smuts decided that the only way to conquer East Africa was by using black troops. He called for more black troops from the East Coast, and while they were being readied for active service, asked for regular black soldiers from the West Coast and from the West Indies.

By this time Smuts' hope to avoid a long guerilla war was blasted. Von Lettow withdrew Kraut to Kilosa, then south to Mahenge. He concentrated the rest of his forces at Morogoro. Smuts tried to encircle him there; he disappeared in the Uluguru Hills. The coming of the rainy season ended hostilities for the rest of 1916.

General Van Deventer succeeded Smuts in 1917. The beginning of the dry season of that year found von Lettow, ever moving to the southeast, at the Mahaba River in the direction of Kilwa. On October 15 an Allied force, coming up the coast from Lindi, met the Germans at Mahiwa-Nyango. In retreat and hard pressed, von Lettow fought four days. When he withdrew at last, of nearly 5000 ~~British~~ infantry, more than half were casualties. Von Lettow had 1500 black troops in action and had 519 casualties.

The Belgians - with native troops - finally approached from the West; and the Rhodesians came up from the Southwest. On November 17, 1917, van Lettow cut down his force to 296 Europeans, 1800 black Askaris, and 3000 porters. He then crossed the border into Portuguese East Africa. Here he sustained himself through the rainy season of 1918, following his ~~unorthodox~~ tested tactics of attacking, always escaping, always inflicting heavy losses on the enemy. These raids kept him supplied with ammunition, and his porters performed miracles of transport. Von Lettow doubled back to the Northwest, slipping by the Rhodesians who were waiting to trap him at Lake Nyasa.

Still free, still fighting, the news of the Armistice was brought to von Lettow by one of his native runners on November 13, and he surrendered on November 23, twelve days after the ~~Armistice~~ war had ended in Europe. At the time of his surrender his force consisted of 30 white officers, 125 other whites, 1165 black soldiers, ~~2200~~ and 2900 other natives, of whom 1000 were refugees who had followed him from Tanganyika.

In this campaign the Allies used 114000 soldiers. Allied casualties were 17,823, a figure not including deaths from sickness, which were 12,000 for the South Africans alone. This campaign led General Smuts to say that the World War had opened the eyes of Europeans to the possibilities of black troops; and this doughty old Boer warrior predicted that in all future conflicts in Africa the black soldier would be called upon to carry the brunt of actual conflict.

The humble porters were called "the black bravest of the brave"; non-combatants all, they made the long struggle possible for both sides.

The Re- cent Libyan Campaign The greatest war in the history of Man began on September 1, 1939, with the German invasion of Poland, followed by declarations of War by France and Great Britain against Germany. Germany quickly crushed Poland in a whirlwind campaign; but in the West, where Germany faced France across the famed Maginot Line, action became farcical. The inactivity led one great American to call the War a "baloney War". The Norway campaign in April of 1940 provided a short and bitter relief.

The "baloney war" on the Western front turned into tragedy on May 10, 1940, when the Germans pushed across the Dutch and Belgian frontiers and into France. In twenty days they had crushed the Dutch, crushed the Belgians, pierced the French line, and forced the withdrawal of 350,000 French and British soldiers across the English Channel from Dunkirk. On June 10th the Italians, who had remained quietly at peace, made a declaration of war against France and Great Britain. The Germans were then thirty miles from Paris and French resistance was practically collapsed.

The entry of the Italians into the War threw an immense strain on the British at the very moment that their most important ally, the French, had crumpled. The Mediterranean Sea has long been looked upon as the "life-line" of the British Empire. The British fleet commanded it with the aid of a friendly France, and the three great fortresses and naval bases of Gibraltar, at the Western end, Malta, a tiny island in the center, and Alexandria, at the Eastern end. The Suez canal was thought to be vital in linking the East and the West together.

It has been Italy's principal purpose in this War to cut this "life-line" of the British Empire. The Italian colony of Libya in North Africa provided a base for an attack on ~~Egypt~~ Alexandria and the Suez Canal through Egypt; while it also furnished air fields and submarine bases from which to attack the convoys necessary to keep Malta and Egypt intact. Libya has been a colony of little but military value. Only a narrow coastal strip is fertile; the interior is a desert without vegetation, and, most important, without water.

The desert sands of Libya have provided for two years examples of a strange and warfare; the wide open spaces provide an ideal locality for the use of mechanized equipment, but the water shortage and the heat and sand storms also make Libya a living hell for both men and machines. In this desert warfare, the capture of land area means nothing, except as it may provide advance fields for aerial activity. What is important is the total destruction of the enemy. The terrain gives every opportunity for the exercise of rapid and decisive strategy.

The Italians under Marshal Graziani pushed into Egypt from Libya late in 1940. Here they held Sidi Barrani, Solum, and fortified Halfaya Pass. In December 1940 and in January of 1941 the British, with Australian and New Zealand troops, inflicted a crushing defeat on the Italians. Tobruk was captured on January 22, Derna on January 30, Benghazi on February 7. The Italians hurriedly reinforced their armies, Graziani was removed from command, and the German Afrika Korps under General Rommel was organized. Counter-attacking, the Axis forces recaptured Benghazi on April 3. Tobruk was placed under siege and Bardia captured on April 13. Solum in Egypt was occupied the next day. Here the Allied resistance stiffened and the Italo-German army

~~The British~~ entrenched itself strongly at Halfaya Pass, still holding Tobruk under siege.

On November 19th the British launched a surprise counter-offensive against the Axis armies. Tobruk was relieved on November 27th and after heavy fighting at Rezegh the Allies early in December made a furious dash as far as El Arghella, almost to the border of Tripoli province. They had over extended their lines, however, and were obliged to withdraw to a line just West of Tobruk.

In May, 1942, the Axis, under the command of General Rommel, threw back a threatened Allied offensive, and, seizing the initiative, in June broke through the Allied lines to capture Tobruk in a dazzling two day thrust. They continued on the now-familiar road leading through Bardia to Solum and Sidi Barrani, and early in July were stopped only seventy-five miles short of the great British Naval Base at Alexandria.

The Allied forces involved included Poles, Australians, 2 English, Canadians, New Zealanders, Free French, and in recent months a growing number of black troops from the Soudan, the East Coast, South Africa, and the West Coast. The Basuto people from their Basutoland protectorate have contributed a large number of men to the Libyan campaign. During 1940-1941 the British were busily engaged in mopping up Italian forces left stranded in Eritrea, Somaliland, and Abyssinia. Most of these operations were carried on by black British colonials from various African colonies.

Dakar Dakar remains in the hands of the Vichy French government, headed by Marshal Petain as Chief of State, with Laval as Premier. French Equatorial Africa has been placed under the control of the "Free French", De Gaulle movement. At the ~~beginning~~ fall of France the Governor of Equatorial Africa was a black man from the Island of Martinique, General Eboue. Eboue subscribed to the De Gaulle movement and in so doing preserved a highly strategic strip of territory providing continuous Allied communications from the West Coast of Africa to Egypt and the Middle East.

The Port of Dakar is one of the best in Africa. By airline Dakar is but 1800 miles from ~~Recife~~ (Pernambuco) in Brazil. Italian aircraft did make regular flights to South America by way of Dakar until recently discontinued. While offset by the British port of Freetown in nearby Sierra Leone, Dakar is in a commanding position to dominate the narrow entrance to the South Atlantic either by aircraft, by surface raiders, or by submarines. Its potentialities as a spring-board for military penetration of South America are increased by the fact that Dakar is only ~~half the distance~~ ~~to Recife~~ ~~as is the closest~~ ~~American base in Guiana~~ ~~and is less than half the distance from Recife to New York.~~ is approximately the same distance from northeastern Brazil ports as is the closest American base in Guiana; and is less than half the distance from Recife to New York.

The railroad now being built by combined German-French interests to connect Dakar with French North Africa will add greatly to Dakar's importance when completed. The port now stands across the sea road to South America, and to West and South Africa; and, beyond that, the lanes to the Middle East and the Far East from the Eastern Atlantic seaboard. Whether its future will be threat or advantage to American interests lies in the laps of the Gods.

The Place of Africa in the World Economy

Africa has become a part of Europe, politically, and economically.

This has come about in the last seventy-five years, since, with manufacturing growing in all European countries, raw materials were increasingly needed. Produced in Africa, these raw materials became finished goods in European factories. Africa, of course, was but one of the great sources in the world of raw materials. South America, the East Indies, and Russia are natural storehouses of natural raw materials not yet used to their full capacity. Africa, however, is the least developed of all, and for many reasons is now the most attractive place in the world for future development of raw materials for the factories of the nations depending on manufacture for their existence.

At the present time, the Negro state of Liberia is the only part of Africa which is ~~completely~~ free of European political control. Abyssinia was formerly listed in this class, but since the conquest of Abyssinia by the Italians in 1936, and the effects of the present war, Abyssinia's case is doubtful.

The principal political units of Africa, with area and population, are listed in the next table.

Area in Square Miles and Population of Political Units in Africa

Political Unit	Area	Population	Political Unit	Area	Population
THE BRITISH EMPIRE (TOTAL)	3,810,009	65,378,513			
Union of South Africa	472,550	9,979,000	Anglo-Egyptian Sudan	969,600	6,342,477
Cape of Good Hope	277,169	3,635,100	Ascension Island	34	154
Natal	35,284	2,018,000	St. Helena	47	4,622
Orange Free State	49,647	790,800	Tristan da Cunha	12	165
Transvaal	110,450	3,535,100			
South West Africa (German to 1918, now under mandate of Union of South Africa)	317,725	314,194	Seychelles Island	156	32,015
British South Africa	734,074	3,895,006	Mauritius Island	720	419,059
Basutoland	11,716	660,650	Dependencies	89	12,144
Bechuanaland Protectorate	275,000	265,756			
Northern Rhodesia	290,320	1,376,325	FRENCH REPUBLIC (TOTAL)	4,272,685	41,806,587
Southern Rhodesia	150,333	1,435,560	Morocco (Protectorate)	362,120	6,242,706
Swaziland	6,705	156,715	Morocco	162,120	6,242,706
British East Africa	716,315	14,241,502	Algeria	847,500	7,234,684
Kenya Colony	224,960	3,500,532	Tunis	46,313	2,608,313
Uganda Protectorate	93,981	3,790,689	French West Africa	1,818,698	14,944,833
Tanganyika (German to 1918, now under mandate)	360,000	5,270,484	Togoland (Mandate; was German until 1918)	21,895	780,497
Nyasaland	37,374	1,679,977	Cameroons (Mandate; was German until 1918)	166,489	2,516,623
Zanzibar Protectorate	1,020	235,428	French Equatorial Africa	959,256	3,422,955
Somaliland Protectorate	68,000	344,700	Reunion	970	312,803
British West Africa	529,756	27,570,191	Madagascar	241,884	3,797,936
Nigeria	372,559	20,641,814	French Somaliland	8,492	44,240
Cameroons (Mandate; formerly German)	34,081	868,637	PORTUGUESE REPUBLIC		
Gold Coast	78,082	3,700,267	Cape Verde Islands	1,557	162,055
Togoland (Mandate; formerly German)	13,041	391,473	Portuguese Guinea	13,944	415,220
Sierra Leone	27,925	1,768,480	San Tome Islands	364	52,100
Gambia	4,068	199,520	Angola	481,226	3,543,300
			Mozambique	297,654	4,995,750

-----BELGIAN CONGO AFRICA

- Belgian Congo	902,082	10,356,191
- Ruanda-Urundi (Mandate; formerly German)	20,535	3,775,335

Area in Square Miles and Population of Political Units in Africa

Political Unit	Area	Population	Political Unit	Area	Population
THE SPANISH STATE	189,346	1,633,846	THE ITALIAN EMPIRE	889,092	2,789,934
- Guinea	10,036	140,000	- Eritrea	15,754	600,573
- Morocco	18,350	750,000	- Somaliland	194,000	1,300,000
- Rio de Oro	109,200	100,000	- Libya	888,401	888,401
- Ifni	965	20,000			
- Fernando Po	795	23,846			

INDEPENDENT STATES

EGYPT (BRITISH SPHERE OF INFLUENCE)	383,000	15,920,703	Liberia	45,000	1,500,000
			(Abyssinia)	350,000	10,000,000

TOTAL - AFRICA

15,920,703

159,131,526

British Africa

The Union of South Africa was ~~unofficially~~ formed in 1910, although the Constitution had been drawn up and discussed ~~unofficially~~ from 1906. It came into existence as the result of the Boer War of 1899-1902, when the descendants of the Dutch settlers were defeated by the British. The Union holds the status of a Dominion in the British Commonwealth of Nations. By Dominion is meant a self-governing unit of the British Empire, with power to levy taxes, administer affairs, and make peace or war without the consent of the homeland being necessary. A colony is ruled directly from England and its laws and measures must always be approved by the home government.

The "white" population of the Union is 2,003,512. It is necessary to "quote" this figure because the census rules do not strictly define the difference between "white" and "coloured" people. In the French colonies, the census takers list as Europeans those who are "Europeans and those assimilated to Europeans"; in South Africa the census taker is left to his discretion, while he is instructed to classify a "native", in contrast to a "coloured" person, as a "person, both of whose parents belong or belonged to an aboriginal (original) race or tribe of Africa, and includes any person of mixed race living as a member of any native community, tribe, kraal, or location."

Race definitions are very important in South Africa. There is a large group of persons between the Europeans and the natives known as "coloured" people. These "coloured" people, while known to have native blood, are separated by custom and separate themselves from the native peoples.

South Africa is ruled by a Parliament, which consists of a representative of the King, the Senate, and the House of Assembly. In each of the four provinces - Cape of Good Hope, Natal, Orange Free State, and the Transvaal - there is a local legislature.

South Africa is famed for its production of gold and of diamonds. The gold mines employ 361,000 persons, or 81% of all employed in the country. As one of the few sections of Africa where the climate and the land seem well fitted for European settlement, it has great interest for the prospects it holds for future immigration.

In addition to the problems of race-relations caused by the presence of the European minority in a country where most of the people are black, South Africa has another race problem because of the presence of East Indians brought in to work as farm laborers and mine workers.

The political history of South Africa began in 1487, when it was discovered by the Portuguese. In 1652 the Dutch occupied it. The British took it over in 1814. The Boers - the name by which the Dutch settlers were called - made a great mass movement to the North in 1833 to form an independent State. The British occupied Natal in 1843, and recognized the independence of the Orange Free State in 1854. The Boers established a second independent Republic in the Transvaal in 1858. The bloody wars between the Boers and the Zulus, which the Boers were unable to check, led to the annexation of the Transvaal by the British in 1877. When gold was discovered in the Boer territories, however, trouble multiplied

[as gold-hunters]

flocked in. The result was the Boer-British War of 1899-1902, with results mentioned before.

British South Africa

South West Africa became a German colony in 1885, as the result of treaties signed by a German traveller, Dr. Peters, with a number of native chieftains. The Germans had great troubles with the natives, the principal tribe of which was the Hereros. In 1895 the Hereros revolted and murdered a number of missionaries and officials. The rebellion was put down with severity. It is estimated that from 75,000 to 100,000 Hereros were killed. The Hereros were a ~~grazing~~ cattle raising tribe, and South West Africa is a dry land with water holes few and far between. The Germans finally put the Hereros down by poisoning, plugging, and blockading their water holes, so that neither man nor beast could reach them.

In 1914-1918, after a brief ~~war~~ campaign, the South Africans captured the German garrisons located in South Africa. By terms of the Treaty of Versailles, South West Africa became a Mandate, to be ruled by the Union of South Africa.

British South Africa is that portion of South Africa outside of the Union, and ruled directly from England. It includes three areas where much land is reserved for native development and tribal life - Basutoland, a reservation for the Basuto people; Bechuanaland, where live the Bechuana and other tribes; and Swaziland, the home of the Swazi tribe. Northern and Southern Rhodesia are named for the great English organizer and business developer, Cecil Rhodes, who was foremost in the development of gold and diamond mining in South Africa. Rhodesia is ~~noted~~ noted for mining developments which promise much for the future. Less than ten thousand of the ~~million~~ million and a half in Northern Rhodesia are white.

British East Africa includes the Kenya colony, the Uganda Protectorate, Tanganyika which before the last World War as a German possession, and Nyasaland. Kenya has a high tableland in the interior, at an elevation of more than 4,000 feet. It is said to have the best climate in Africa. The highest mountain in Africa, Kilimanjaro, is located on the border between Kenya and Tanganyika, and is snow-covered, although almost on the equator.

Tanganyika became a mandate (administered by) of the British in the peace settlement after the war. The capital, Dar-es-Salaam, was built by the Germans from an Arab trading station, and is said to be one of the most beautiful cities in the world. In both Kenya and Tanganyika the chief health hazard is the disease caused by the bite of the Tsetse fly, sleeping sickness. Nyasaland was made a British protectorate in 1891; it is the home of the Yao tribe, one of the most southern groups of interior natives ~~including~~ holding to the Mohammedan faith.

The Zanzibar protectorate is the old seat of a trade with Arabia and India that goes back more than a thousand years. According to Marco Polo, the Chinese sent an entire fleet to Zanzibar and the area surrounding it in the year 1285. The Arab state of Mogdishue was founded about 900 A. D. Following the voyages of Vasco de Gama to India (1497-1502) the Portuguese gradually took over the East Coast of Africa. The Portuguese declined with the decay of their home land as a colonial power. Zanzibar was part of an Arab state that was ruled from Oman on the southwest tip of Arabia. They were separated in 1859; the Mohammedan sultans who ruled the two states lacked strength, and interested themselves only in trade. The British easily took over and converted the area to rule by the British Empire.

The native population of Zanzibar includes a great many Arabs who are in fact heavily mixed with the blood of Africans - Negro and Bantu peoples. The slave trade in Zanzibar flourished for years after it was stopped on the West Coast. Somali and

Somaliland under the British is a strip of malarial sand inhabited by people of the Galla tribes and other Hamitic and Nilotic Negro extraction. The capital city is Berbera. The value of British Somaliland to the Empire, with Abyssinia and Italian Somaliland as neighbors, has principally been strategic.

British West Africa includes the most densely populated, and in some respects the richest, colonial possessions in Africa.

Of this group Nigeria is the largest, ~~and the most populous~~ The size of Belgium, the British Isles, and France combined, it is also, next to India, the most populous British possession, with a population of more than twenty million. Up to 1630 ~~Nigeria~~ Nigeria was ruled by a

a number of federations of chiefs in the South, while the Northern part fell within the great Sudan states established by the Fulani, the Mossi, the Hausa, and other Sudanese tribes. The states of Yoruba and Benin were famous as the center for a highly developed culture. It was in 1630 that Benin conquered Lagos.

Lagos was ruled by ten chieftains known as "white caps"; although their power has long since diminished, the original families of these chiefs still retain great authority in the city. By 1750 Lagos had become the center of the slave trade on the West Coast of Africa. ~~At that time~~ In 1850, when the slave trade was under the ban of the major governments, it remained the smuggling center for the trade. The British supported one candidate for the throne on his promise that he would help suppress the slave trade, give protection to missionaries, and encourage free trade.

Nigeria is divided into two provinces as a colony under a regulation of 1914. The northern colony has its capital at Kaduna, while Lagos is the capital both of the Southern province and of the entire colony. The colony is ruled by a Governor appointed by the Colonial Office in England, with two lieutenant-governors.

The Gold Coast has been mentioned above. The home of the Fantee and Ashantee people, it has been the center of British trade in gold since the beginning of the last century when the Dutch and Portuguese were finally ousted by the British. The former German colony of ~~Idunghastanus~~ Togo was passed to the Gold Coast in 1919, with the Cameroons being divided between the French and the British.

Sierra Leone, with its port of Freetown, has for long been a strategic center of great value to the British Empire. ~~Sierra~~ The capital city takes its name from the freed Negroes who were returned to this coast by philanthropists at the time of the emancipation of slaves in England. The 30,000 descendants of these freedmen are called Creoles. ~~Sierra Leone~~ The famous judgment that gave birth to the colony was that given by Lord Mansfield in 1772. A Negro carried to England from the West Indies by his master brought suit for his freedom; and Lord Mansfield gave the historic ruling that when any man, whatever his condition or race, set foot in the British Isles, he automatically became free. The first shipment of Negroes freed in England arrived at Freetown in 1787, and others were sent to the colony from as far away as Nova Scotia. The establishment of this settlement gave American philanthropists the idea of establishing a home for freed Negroes from that country in Liberia, which is the neighbor to Sierra Leone.

Gambia is a small territory which has the unhappy distinction of giving its name to the deadly yellow fever mosquito, Gambiense. The Gambia river is navigable for ocean going steamers to some distance upstream; but the territory is small and ~~just~~ too poor to take much advantage from this source of transportation.

Anglo-Egyptian Soudan is an immense territory ruled in partnership by Egypt and the British. The British interest in Egypt has been, for the last one hundred and fifty years, to protect a life-line to the great British areas of the Far East; and with the discovery of oil in the Middle East, and the opening of the Suez Canal, this interest has become vital. The Soudan is the source of the waters of the great Nile river which ~~Sierra Leone~~ has made civilization possible in Egypt. Many important flood control projects have been built by British engineers in the Sudan, for the Nile has been the most unreliable of rivers. Control of the Soudan has been a policy of the British to supplement their control of the Suez Canal. In more recent years the Soudan has also been a link in the chain of British possessions stretching from the "Cape to Cairo." Highly strategic railroad ~~Sierra Leone~~ and air lines have been made possible by the control, by the British, of a continuous line from North to South in Africa.

Among the smaller off-shore islands of Africa under British control, their importance as naval bases and ~~Sierra Leone~~ fueling stations has considerable value in these trying days for the British fleet. St. Helena is remembered as the last home of Napoleon Bonaparte, who was exiled there following his defeat at Waterloo.

French Africa France has had the largest territorial stake - in size - of any European nation, although the material riches of this territory ~~in fact~~ are far inferior to the smaller British area. French land holdings cover an area of 4,272,685 square miles, - larger than the United States - with a population of 41,806,587.

Algeria has been a French possession since early in the 19th century. The people ~~represent~~ include considerable numbers of French who have settled in the country, and a large ~~Muslim~~ Mohammedan population largely of Semitic stock. To combat the fierce ~~mountain~~ desert and moroccan tribes which have not yet been completely pacified, France has always kept a large garrison in Algeria, including the Foreign Legion. Algeria was called the "bread basket" of France on account of its large grain crops.

Following the armistice signed by the French following their crushing defeat in France by the German Army in June, 1940, the British hoped that the French would ~~withdraw~~ ~~from~~ continue the struggle in Algeria with the considerable force of more than 200,000 men stationed there. In addition, a large part of the French fleet was stationed at the naval base of Oran. The French decided, however, to let the armistice end official French resistance everywhere. Fearing that the French fleet might fall into the hands of the Germans, the British demanded that the fleet be turned over to them or scuttled. At the refusal of the French to agree, there followed the tragic battle of Oran, with partial destruction of the French units stationed there, and resulting bitterness on all sides.

Tunisia is the site of the ancient glories of Carthage. ~~Highland~~ Forming one end of the "bottle neck" of the Mediterranean, with Sicily on the other, Tunisia has more Italian than French residents. For this and for strategic reasons the Italians have long asserted their right to ~~maintain~~ ownership.

~~Morocco~~ The portion of Morocco under French control has provided the background for many a stirring movie and novel reciting the adventures of France's famous Foreign Legion. Both in French and Spanish Morocco the natives have been almost ~~unconquerable~~. Even with the advantage of airplane reconnaissance, strafing, and bombing, the high mountains of the Riff chain defy would-be conquerors.

The largest French colony, however, is that of French West Africa, an area of almost two million square miles. Included in this great land mass is the Sahara desert, inhabited only by occasional nomadic tribes. The dream of France, yesterday, was to link the French possessions on the Mediterranean with those of the Equatorial regions. Air lines, motor cars equipped with caterpillar treads, and proposed railroads have partially met the problem. A railroad proposed to run from Algeria through the Western Sahara to Dakar has been a grave concern to Allied forces since the French withdrew from the war. It has been reported that this line is under rapid construction and its strategic value for supplying operations in the South Atlantic, if in enemy hands, constitutes a threat to American interests for the future.

The French acquired most of French West Africa ~~from~~ in the twenty years after 1854. General Faidherbe, then Governor, directed a conquest of the territory from Dakar and Saint Louis. The French occupied Timbuktu, the great Soudanese trade center, in 1894. When it is realized that French West Africa is more than 12 times the size of France, we may conceive the difficulties Faidherbe had to overcome.

The French colonial policy in the past has differed from that of other nations in that all stress was ~~mainly~~ placed on making the natives good Frenchmen. French citizenship has been extended to natives of Senegal, and a forceful Negro lawyer of Dakar, Blaise Diagne, achieving a high place as a Delegate to the French Parliament and as a member of the Cabinet charged with responsibilities for colonial government. Recent changes in France during the German occupation have greatly changed the official attitude of the home government.

French Equatorial Africa stretches from the Atlantic coast, in the Gulf of Guinea, to Lake Chad in the far interior. The French had hopes of dominating all Africa North of the Equator. They were obliged to compromise with the British and Germans.

~~Archaeology~~

French Equatorial Africa has suffered a decrease in its population from 12 million in 1900 to less than 7 million today. The decline is said to be due to several factors, including the spread of disease caused by the labor system in use, the deadly effects of sleeping sickness, which has spread rapidly, and to ~~the~~ actual starvation due to the lack of food. With roads and railroads lacking in the jungles of Equatorial Africa, famine is widely spread.

Togoland and the Cameroons were German colonies until 1918, when at the peace settlement they were given over to the French and British jointly. French Somaliland, and the islands of Reunion and Madagascar have had great strategic value in the past. Madagascar is inhabited by a people whose relationship to the Negritoes of ~~the~~ New Guinea and ~~the~~ Australia is clear. This has given rise to the belief by some scholars that at some distant time a great migration brought these people to the coast of Africa.

Portuguese The Portuguese were the first to explore the Coast of Africa. Before Columbus discovered America the great captain Vasco da Gama had sailed extensively along the African coasts. Following him the Portuguese established trading centers on both West and East coasts. They adventured as far as Abyssinia, where in 1550 they ~~established~~ established themselves, built forts, and shared the rule of the country.

Today the Portuguese, long since displaced by the British and French, hold only relatively insignificant parts of Africa. ~~Angola~~ Angola on the West Coast has been portuguese since 1575. The old capital at Loanda was a pest-hole for 360 years; recently the capital has been moved to Lisboa in the interior, a high and healthy place.

On the ~~East~~ East Coast of Africa is Mozambique. The capital and chief port is Lourenco Marques, which provides an excellent harbor not only for Mozambique but also for the Union of South Africa and Rhodesia, lying inland to the West. Portuguese Guinea is a minor possession. The Cape Verde Islands have great strategic value. Their population in ~~1936~~ 1936 was 162,065, only six thousand of whom were classed ~~as~~ as white. The Cape Verde islands, with Dakar, are the key to the South Atlantic and the lands in Africa and South America which it touches.

Belgian The Belgian Congo was once the ~~home~~ setting for great native states. As early as Africa 1500 the Loango kingdom covered vast stretches of the Congo. In 1680 a king named N'totela ruled the lower Congo.

The Belgian Congo had a peculiar start. In 1876 Leopold II of Belgium called together a Conference of Geography. The purpose of the Conference was to discuss African affairs and the possibility of helping the Africans to become civilized. This was to be done through European occupation. This Conference formed the International African Association, with Leopold as Chairman. Explorers were hired and among these was Henry Stanley. ~~Stanley~~ Stanley, a newspaper man, had been sent to Africa to find the great missionary explorer David Livingstone. Livingstone had been "lost" in Central Africa for several years. Stanley did find Livingstone after many trials and skirmishes with the natives, and these stories interested the entire world.

In 1879 Stanley entered the Congo, and reached the center of Africa. ~~Stanley~~ Stanley Falls and Stanley Pool, on the upper Congo, are named for him. In the meanwhile Leopold had been extending his plans. In 1878 the King secretly organized the "Committee for the Study of the Upper Congo". This was a business ~~company~~ organization whose purpose was to invest money to develop the Belgian Congo with Belgian money. Leopold, an extremely shrewd man, was able to get the help of Bismarck of Germany. Bismarck backed him against British and Portuguese interests.

The "Belgian Free State", with Leopold as President, was finally organized and recognized as a noble-minded venture which would bring great blessings to the natives of the Congo. However, the purpose of Leopold to make money ~~from~~ investments did not permit the realization of his noble aims. The chief ~~main~~ raw materials in the Congo were Ivory and Rubber. In order to collect enough rubber to make the venture profitable, it was necessary to send into the Congo a large number of officials, and to hire a number

of native soldiers. Each official and sometimes each non-commissioned officer of the soldiers was given a quota of rubber which the people under his supervision had to collect. Rubber in the Congo grew wild, and the trees were far apart. The result was that it was very hard for the natives to meet the demands of the ~~colonial~~ government agents - who were really the agents of Leopold's business. If natives did not ~~bring in~~ bring in the share of rubber expected of them, severe punishments were administered. Villages would be burned; whippings would be given; and in many cases the native's hand or hands would be chopped off, both to punish him and to warn the rest that it was not safe to fall down on the rubber quota.

American newspaper men finally got news of what was happening in the Congo, and forced a reform. Leopold was obliged to turn his personal business interest in the Congo over to the Belgian State, by which it is now administered. However, when Leopold died it was estimated that he had built fifty million dollars worth of buildings in Belgium, most of which he donated to the cities and States in which they were located. Among the structures erected by his Congo-earned money was a five million dollar residence for a lady friend.

Many of the abuses which marked the early days of the Congo under Leopold were quickly remedied by the Belgian Government. The sad experience also led to reform in other African colonies.

Spanish Intent on building up their gains in the New World, Spanish explorers had little Africa to do with the opening up of Africa. The Spanish are more important to the history of the Negro people for having opened up the New World, and creating a market, in the mines and plantations of that New World, for black slaves from Africa. The most populous African possession of Spain, Morocco, has been a constant source of trouble to them. It was the disastrous defeat of the Spanish armies by the Riff tribes in 1925-1929 which led to the fall of King Alfonso XIII and the formation of the Spanish Republic in 1931. Of the other African possessions of Spain, Fernando Po has been notable recently for claims that a system of virtual slavery was being carried on, with long-time forced laborers being imported from Liberia with the connivance of Liberian authorities.

Italian While Italian Africa at the present time is confined to disputed Libya, much Africa blood and expense has been paid by the Italians for a foothold in Africa. Libya, Eritrea, and Somaliland caused the Italians to complain, before the present war, that they had been cheated in the international scramble for Africa. All are principally desert lands, with few raw material sources. The Italian heart was set on Abyssinia; with the conquest of that Kingdom in 1936 the Italians felt they had achieved much. Those gains, together with the older colonies of Eritrea and Somaliland, now lay in the balance of world conflict.

Egypt Egypt, with Babylon and China, represents the world's oldest center of civilization. Its recent history has not been glorious. The fertile Nile Valley, fertilized each year by the floods of the river, supports a mixed population of sixteen million people. The Nile is now controlled by great irrigation and dam projects extending as far to the South as Abyssinia. One of these great dams, a tribute to British engineering skill, is the Cabel Asila dam, longest (16,400 feet) in the world.

Egypt was before 1914 a part ~~of the~~ (in name only) of the ~~British~~ Turkish Empire. The British assumed a temporary control as a war measure in 1914. In 1922 a treaty left Egypt independent; she agreed to give the British certain rights to the use of Alexandria and Port Said as naval bases, and to transport troops freely across the country in the event of war. During the present War Egypt has maintained its neutrality while great armies struggled ~~at the~~ within its gates.

Liberia The only completely independent country in Africa, Liberia, 42,000 square miles in area, is about the size of the State of Pennsylvania. The population numbers some two million people, of whom from thirty to forty thousand represent the original American Negro settlers. Liberia began in 1822 when the African Colonization Society in the United States sent a shipload of free Negroes to begin their life again in the land

of their fathers. The early settlers had terrific struggles with the native tribes, and with disease. In 1847 the Liberians formed a government and declared themselves a free

1
republic. The Constitution is modeled after that of the United States, with a President, Senate ~~and~~ Supreme Court, and similar officials. To vote one must be ~~and~~ of Negro blood and own land.

Liberia has had a troubled history; but the citizens have shown a marked respect for the constitutional processes of law and order. At one time Liberia became heavily in debt as a result of ill-judged loans from European countries. In this emergency the United States has maintained a friendly relation with Liberia over the years, and has supervised the finances of the country since 1922. Negro Ministers regularly represent the United States as a tradition of the State Department. The Firestone Rubber Company has established extensive rubber plantations in Liberia, and these sources should provide some rubber within the next few years.

The native tribes of Liberia belong to the Kru and Mandingo peoples. The Americo-Liberians are Christians, the Mandingoes principally Mohammedan, and the Krus pagans. Lack of money has prevented the Liberians from carrying on an extensive program of education among the native tribes. As a matter of fact, the history of Liberia has been marked by as savage warfare with the native tribes on the part of the settlers as in other parts of the Continent.

Abyssinia The Abyssinians are a proud people, and they have an ancient history. In the Bible (I Kings, 10-1) we read that the Queen of Sheba came to see the great King Solomon to "prove him with hard questions. And she came to Jerusalem with a very great train, with camels that bare spices, and very much gold, and precious stones; and when she was come to Solomon, she commended with him of all that was in her heart." We are further told that Solomon showed the Queen all of his wonderful achievements and that Sheba had to confess that "the half was not told to me; thy wisdom and prosperity exceedeth the fame which I heard." As a present she gave Solomon 120 talents of gold, ~~and~~ precious stones, and more spices than had ever been seen before.

The Abyssinians trace their line back to this Queen; for they say that on the occasion of the visit Sheba had a son by Solomon, whom she christened Menelik. Another tradition holds that Menelik was educated in Jerusalem, and that he brought back with him the Ark of the Covenant which he had stolen, with 12000 Jews.

The Abyssinians became Christians in the third century after Christ; they are the oldest surviving Christian people in the World. They conquered Arabia in the year 520, and were defeated at Mecca in 570, two months before the birth of Mohammed. Protected by the Red Sea, their valor, and their mountains, the Abyssinians escaped the early Mohammedan invasions which so terrified Europe. In 1500 the Turks revived the warlike spirit of the Moslem faith and swept into Arabia and across to Abyssinia. In the year 1540 a company of 450 Portuguese soldiers, armed with muskets; and by 1543 they had expelled the Turks. The Portuguese brought Jesuit priests, and built many forts in the land; but in 1645 the Abyssinians expelled the Jesuits and the Portuguese.

Abyssinia fell into disorder, with the princes of the small provinces of Tigre, Gojjam, Amhara and Shoa setting themselves up as kings and defying central authority. Theodore, born in 1820, put down these lesser lights and had himself crowned as Emperor of Abyssinia in 1855. In 1867 Lord Napier led a small British army into Abyssinia and captured the capital city (then) of Magdala. Following the rule of his people, Theodore committed suicide. His successor, King John, was defeated by the ~~army~~ army of the Mahdi when he made an effort to invade the Soudan in 1887. His successor was a shrewd and powerful personality, Menelik of Shoa. When the Italians pushed into the country in 1896, Menelik met them with a huge army (see above) and utterly crushed them.

By 1936 the Italians felt ready to revenge themselves for this humiliation; and they were. Greatly aided by aircraft, and with a skillful engineering that overcame the dreaded dangers of bad transport and ~~immense~~ lack of transportation, the Italians wrought tremendous and speedy damage upon the Abyssinians. In the race to win the war before the rainy season began, the Italians won, and the Emperor Haile Selassie had to flee to England where he took refuge. The Abyssinians lacked aircraft, anti-aircraft guns, and effective artillery. One of their greatest defects, however, lay in the over-confidence and pride which led them to believe that they could destroy the modernized Italian army as easily as they had defeated the army of Baratieri at Adowa in ~~1896~~ 1896. Haile Selassie returned to Abyssinia in 1941 with the aid of the

Came to the rescue

British; cut off from home by the British blockade of the Suez Canal, the Italians resisted to the bitter end, but in vain.

THE PLACE OF AFRICA IN THE WORLD - ECONOMIC

General Picture - Raw Materials - Agriculture and forest products - minerals and mining - labor conditions - markets - transportation

North America, Europe, and Japan alone in Asia are places where the Machine is all important. The machines must be operated by skillful men and women. They must also have raw materials to turn into finished materials. A cotton mill must be supplied with raw cotton. A factory making electrical goods must be supplied with raw copper. In the hands of the skilled men, working with machines, the raw cotton and the raw copper become finished goods to wear, beautifully finished wires and pipes and motors.

To produce the goods needed in a machine age, few countries have ~~the~~ all of the raw materials they need. The United States does not have all of the copper it needs. England does not have any cotton in the home country, nor does Germany, or Japan. In normal times trade between nations ~~exchanges~~ is an exchange of the goods each country can make for the goods it cannot make or for the raw materials it does not have.

Africa was the last place in the world to be searched ~~in~~ for raw materials. It was also the last place in the world open to settlement and conquest. The value of Africa to the world lies in its raw materials. Full surveys of Africa have never been made. Already great and rich sources of raw materials have ~~already~~ been discovered, and worked, in Africa. There is every reason to believe that when we more know of Africa we shall find it one of the richest of countries.

A new factor may affect the future of Africa as a place where raw materials for manufacturing countries can be found and produced cheaply in quantity. This is the rapid advance of Science in making raw materials ~~in~~ by chemical and physical means. If we can - and it seems that we can - make good rubber - even better rubber - out of grain alcohol and crude oil and coal - ^{rubber}Malaya and Africa and South America will lose their value as places to produce raw materials. If we can - and we do - make rayon silk as good as silkworm silk, and make it out of wood ~~pulp~~ and paper pulp, Japan and China lose their value as places where raw silk is grown; and the Southern United States, Russia, China, and Africa lose their value as places where raw cotton can be grown.

It will yet be a long time before ~~it will happen~~ all raw materials needed can be produced by chemists at home. Until that time comes, Africa will remain a rich prize for those who can control its resources.

uses

Agriculture in Africa ~~Products of the soil have three uses in Africa:~~ Products of the soil have three ~~uses~~ in Africa: (1), the production always carried on to produce food for the people in their natural state; (2), production of raw material crops ~~and~~ to be sent out of Africa to manufacturing countries; and (3) production of food crops to supply the growing number of people, white and black, living in cities, in mining districts, and around industrial centers.

(1). The most striking fact about the principal ~~food~~ crops of Africa is that they are ~~not~~ not native. Manioc, tobacco, sorghum, sweet potatoes - all are native to America, and they have been brought to Africa in the last three hundred years. One of the most remarkable of historical stories is the way in which the cultivation of these crops has spread over the whole continent. Tobacco was brought to West Africa by the Portuguese about 1600, and by 1800 had been spread ~~everywhere~~ everywhere in Africa.

Under the conditions of native life, few African tribes had any notion of private property in the land. The land was thought of as belonging to the tribe, and the chiefs and his council were thought of as trustees of the land, for the people. When Europeans came to Africa, wishing to buy and occupy land, this situation cost endless trouble and misunderstanding. For example, a Chief might "sell" all of the tribal land to a European for a half dozen bottles of Gin. When the natives discovered that their land had been "sold", they could not understand it. Since the courts, if appealed to, generally followed European principles of land law, the natives found themselves in a position where they were called "squatters" on land which they knew ~~had~~ belonged to the tribe for perhaps hundreds of years.

One of the reasons that African slavery was successful, while American Indian slavery failed, was the familiarity of the Africans with agricultural operations. The Kikuyu people of Tanganyika are noted gardeners. This tribe moved south from Kenya about 1840. They bought land from the Wanderobo people, a tribe which lived by hunting. The Kikuyu cleared the forests, and made the land a patchwork of beautiful gardens. In Northern Nigeria the Kano state rules more than a million Mohammedans. They are said to till the soil with a skill rare anywhere in the world. A visiting agricultural expert from Europe, noting that the people tilled peanuts by hand, reported them to be backward and recommended the use of cattle for ploughing. On investigation it was found that because of heavy rains and the nature of the soil, hand cultivation was the best method to use.

Although cattle raising is a favored occupation of the Bantu people. The ravages of the Tsetse fly have made it impossible to keep cattle in many parts of Africa. Even where great numbers of cattle are raised the diet of the people is mainly vegetarian. Cattle ~~now~~ take the place ~~of money in the native culture~~ of money in the native culture. Tribes may have large quantities of cattle for which they have no visible use. They are used in exchanging goods, in ~~markets~~ purchasing wives, and in the many ways in which currency would be used in other places.

In the Uganda territory the crops raised for food include plantains (near-kin to the Banana), grain (millet), beans, peas, sweet potatoes, sorghum, ~~and~~ a native spinach, and other vegetables. Locusts, grasshoppers, and white ants are eaten as delicacies. Uganda is fortunate; in most of Africa, especially on the East Coast, the natives depend on one crop - the corn familiar to Americans, Millet, or sweet potatoes. When there are crop failures ~~the entire tribes are likely to~~ perish.

The West Coast African is the best fed native in Africa. Fatty foods are present here where lacking elsewhere. The vegetable diet of most of Africa gives bulk foods (carbohydrates) with few fats; on the West African coast oil-yielding plants - palm and cocoa-nuts - provide this important necessity.

(2). The principal crops raised for export are cotton, cocoa, coffee, and palm oil from the cocoa-nut palm. Cotton can be raised more cheaply in Africa than in the United States. One of the explanations for low cotton prices in this country during the last twenty years has been increased production of cheap cotton in Africa. The Anglo-Egyptian Sudan produces great quantities of cotton, and the cultivation of the crop is being extended yearly. Uganda now produces more than four hundred thousand bales of cotton a year. Tanganyika, Nyasaland, Nigeria, and French West Africa are also bit cotton producers.

Coffee is an important export crop in East Africa. Zanzibar is one of the great centers for clove production in the world. Throughout East Africa new efforts are being made to introduce tropical crops, and considerable attention is given to the agricultural education of the native population.

The two export crops that make West Africa the richest colonies in Africa are cocoa and palm oil. The Gold Coast produces more than one half of the world supply of cocoa, exporting nearly three hundred thousand tons annually.

Cocoa was brought to the Spanish Island of Fernando Po from Mexico. A Gold Coast native, William Tetteh Quarshie, brought some seeds to the Gold Coast from Fernando Po in 1876. From his small plot the cultivation of cocoa spread over the entire West Coast, and shipments rose from 80 tons in 1891 to their present figure. The Cocoa is raised on small family plots and is a source of ~~needed~~ revenue to the natives unlike anything else in Africa with the possible exception of palm oil.

Nigeria finds its fortune in palm oil, exporting one hundred and fifty thousand tons in normal years. The ~~palm~~ trees grow wild and bear for one hundred years. Efforts have been made by the large soap manufacturers who use quantities of the palm oil to introduce plantations. In the last few years plantations of the trees have been started in Malaya and Sumatra, already rich in rubber and coffee plantations.

Quantities of peanuts are also raised for export; peanut oil has proved a valuable raw material in many manufacturing uses. Nigeria produced 127 thousand tons in 1930, and the Soudan in years past exported peanuts to France.

While the Nigerian ~~peanut~~ palm oil and Gold Coast cocoa producers are far in advance of the typical African, economically, their incomes are low by American standards. The typical income of a family raising cocoa is about \$75 a year. The fact that almost all foods are home-grown indicates a more favorable picture.

(3). Food production for the fast-growing cities and mining districts throughout Africa has become a grave problem. In order to work the mines, it is necessary to ~~transport~~ drain labor from the native communities. At the same time lack of transportation makes it difficult to tap the food resources of nearby areas. The industrial areas therefore suffer both from an acute labor shortage and from a shortage of home grown foods.

To meet this ~~labor~~ demand each of the colonial powers is giving attention to increased and scientific food production. In Tanganyika, for example, agricultural schools have been started for teachers who come with their wives to study improved methods. In the same colony schools for instructing the natives in ploughing have been begun. The Germans, before the War forced them to give up their colonies, had started excellent trade and agricultural schools in both German East Africa and in their colonies on the West Coast.

Minerals and Mining The precious minerals and stones have been mined in Africa for thousands of years. The famed "Gold of Ophir" referred to gold deposits worked three thousand years ago in what is now Abyssinia. The Gold Coast was probably known to the Phoenicians, three thousand years ago; and it was the discovery of gold and diamonds in South Africa that awakened the great powers to the potential richness of Africa.

Africa has yet to be surveyed for its mineral deposits. At the present time we know that coal, copper, diamonds, and gold are found in the Belgian Congo; asbestos, chrome, copper, gold, and manganese in Rhodesia; coal, diamonds, gold, manganese, in South Africa; coal in Mozambique, Nigeria; copper in South West Africa; gold in the French dependencies, in Kenya, the Gold Coast, Mozambique, South West Africa, Southern Rhodesia, Tanganyika; and iron ores almost everywhere South of the Sahara. The smelting and refining of iron is one of the oldest African arts, and there are many to believe that the discovery of iron smelting lies with the African. Bauxite, bismuth, cobalt, columbite, graphite, haematite, lead, platinum, radium, silver, tantalite, tin, uranium, vanadium, and zinc are other minerals which have been discovered ~~abundantly~~ in quantity deposits in ~~South~~ Africa.

Three barriers block further progress in African mining development. They are, lack of labor; lack of transportation; and lack of surveys. The first two are bound together. The country generally is sparsely settled. The natives are not accustomed to a "money" life; that is, they have neither the desires nor the habits that lead people to work by the day for wages.

Where extensive mining developments have been made, it is common practise to house laborers in large barracks, called "compounds". At the diamond mines in Kimberley the workers are not allowed to leave the compounds for fear of theft. When a native has finished his period of labor, he is even given a strong laxative - to determine if he has swallowed a diamond.

~~Both~~ Both at the gold and diamond mines in South Africa, the gold mines on the Witwatersrand, the lead and zinc mines at Broken Hill, Rhodesia, and the copper mines in the Belgian Congo at Katanga, tremendously large numbers of natives are employed. In 1936, 341,207 natives were employed on the Rand, in South Africa. The labor has to be obtained from very distant areas. Of the Rand mine workers, 69,104 came from Portuguese territories, 49,582 from Basutoland, 7,521 from Swaziland,

and 3,833 from other territories. The Katanga copper mines in the Belgian Congo get their workers sometimes from as far away as a thousand miles.

Trans- Africa is unfortunate in not having great open rivers which could be used to
porta- reach the interior. The Congo and the Nile are the only such streams, and the
tion Congo is blocked by the great Stanley Falls far short of its full course. The
Great Lakes of the East African plateau do furnish a chain of some importance,
but they cannot compare to the Great Lakes of America in their usefulness for this purpose.

A still important means of transportation in Africa is the oldest form known to man -
porterage. Natives carry loads of fifty pounds on journeys that last for days, and through
rain and cold, with food always uncertain. To carry large amounts of anything by this means
requires, of course, great numbers of carriers. It is estimated that it takes two thousand
men to carry one hundred tons of produce a month, over a distance of 100 miles. During
the first world war the French required 125,000 carriers to transport 4200 tons of food
for military uses.

The Allied campaign against General von Lettow's German army in East Africa during
the first World War was called the "battle of the black carriers". The movement of
both armies was based on the hard labor of thousands of ~~men~~ porters. Von Lettow
transported field pieces and naval guns literally thousands of miles through regions
where no roads existed; and his black porters endured with the utmost loyalty hardships
and dangers to which his Army was exposed.

Animals are used extensively; camels in the Sahara and Kalahari deserts, donkeys,
poxies and oxen in the Northern district of Nigeria. In many places in Central and East
Africa the tsetse fly, the ~~next~~ bearer of sleeping sickness, has made animal transport
impossible by killing all of the livestock. Porterage is an essential in these regions.
Porterage spreads disease from one district to another, and is an immense waste of
human time and life.

Railroads have been built rapidly in Africa, in spite of great labor difficulties.
The roads must be run through areas where there are no cities or towns. Labor must be
brought to the railroad line, and follow it. The food of the laborers has to be brought
from great distances. The sanitary conditions of railroad camps sometimes is such as to
make for a high mortality.

Motor roads are increasing. The Sahara desert provides a great open space for tractor
Labor The African has no background of a daily wage system. His past life has had in it
a sameness like that of all pre-literate (people living in a cultural state without
letters) people. He has had no radios, automobiles, blues records, tan shoes, green ties,
silk shirts, underwear, ~~underwear, silk stockings, or fancy hats for women,~~
to want to buy. He has had no newspapers or magazines, no movies or radio, no billboards
or salesmen to tell him that he ought to have these and the other million ~~articles~~ articles
of modern civilization.

As a result the African wants but little here below, and there is little for him to
buy if he wanted it. On top of this is the fact that the struggle for existence is
hard even in his natural state. He is likely to be sick a great deal, and in spite of the
idea that Africans have only to reach into the trees to get food, a great deal of hard
labor is required just to get enough to eat.

Since the African has not the habit nor the desire ~~in~~ or setting to work
regularly, "forced" labor becomes necessary in every colony in Africa. The chief means
used by governments to force the native to work is to place a heavy tax on him. This may
sometimes be a head or poll tax, and sometimes a hut tax, ~~which the village headman or chief is responsible.~~ for
which the village headman or chief is responsible. The native has to have money to pay
this tax. He can only earn money by working for the Europeans; hence he is forced to
work. The work may be on public roads, on railroads, on farms, or in and around the mines.

Great progress has been made in improving the condition of these workers in the
last few years. One student of the situation states that the system used - bringing large
numbers of natives from distant and back country places, to work together for two or three
years - is the best system that could have been imagined for educating the natives to
European ways. On the other hand, the life is not entirely rosy for the African laborer.
A "boy", for example, who is recruited to work in the gold mines at Johannesburg,
South Africa, may come from Portuguese Africa, three or four hundred miles away. The

recruiting or labor agent gives him a blanket, a jersey, a sweater, shorts, and a ration when he signs up. If he has a wife, she gets a blanket and an allowance of cloth.

In the mines in Rhodesia the laborer will get a minimum wage of 15 or 20 shillings (about \$5.00) a month. He will be better paid in ~~the~~ Rhodesia than in the Belgian Congo, and may average in the South African mines about \$12.00 a month. In addition to the cash pay, he receives his food and his living in the company "compounds", with medical service.

The laborer works for 8 hours. The rest of his time he spends in the compound. The compound is a barracks, ~~or~~ usually long low brick buildings enclosed in five or ten acres of land. From ~~five~~ ^{one} to ~~ten~~ ^{two} thousand natives live in a compound. Within the barracks are long levels of bunks, made of cement with a "perfecto" surface. Each compound has its own kitchen, where food is prepared according to government specifications and Kaffir Beer is served. In compounds that are "open" the laborers can get passes to visit town. The "closed" compounds are those around diamond mines, where workers have to live until their work contracts are up. It is against the law for the native to "quit" his work until his contract is up.

The laborers come from such long distances that it is not ~~practically~~ possible for them to bring their wives. In a mining town, there are usually few women, while there are thousands of men. Without full medical supervision, venereal diseases run rampant, as most of the women found near such "compounds" are prostitutes. Sodomy and other forms of vice are also likely to be found in the "bachelor" compounds.

Almost everywhere in Africa contact with "civilization" and industry has greatly disorganized the natives. The port towns and the mining towns are full of vice. It has been pointed out by students that the changes to city and industrial life in Europe were carried out over 600 years. In Africa ~~these~~ these changes have come in twenty or thirty years.

The Native who leaves his tribe and comes to a city or a mine is called "de-tribalized" (stripped of his tribal customs). While the customs of the tribes may seem queer to outsiders, they were the "law and the gospel" for the native, and controlled his life. Outside of his tribal community, he is outside of the only law system he understands, and in a new system that he does not understand. Adultery, for example, is handled by severe fines in most tribes; a man caught in adultery with another man's wife must pay the man a very large sum, figured in cows or goats or oxen. If he is in a mining village or a city away from his tribe, there is no way to bring him within the tribal law, and the European law either does not punish him or does not make sense to him.

For this reason the European governments are trying more and more to keep native law and native authority in force, as they now realize that it was a mistake to root out all native law and authority and to try to substitute for it strange European law and social customs.

CHAPTER IX.

THE NEGRO IN BRAZIL

Race and racial groups in Brazil - History of Brazil - Brazilian Negroes as Soldiers -
The Quilombos and Palmares - Brazilian Negro in Politics - Negro Culture in Brazil -
The Bush Negroes of Guiana.

THE NEGRO IN BRAZIL

Race and racial groups in Brazil - History of Brazil - Brazilian Negroes as Soldiers -
 The Quilombos and Palmares - Brazilian Negro in Politics - Negro Culture in Brazil -
 The Bush Negroes of Guiana.

Brazil is the largest State in South America; its area in fact is larger than that of the ~~xxxxxxxxxxxx~~ United States, if Alaska be left out. It covers an area of 3,275,510 square miles, and in 1940 had 41,556,605 inhabitants.

Brazil also has the largest population of Negroes of any country outside of the United and Africa. This is so whatever we mean by "Negro". In Brazil the word "Negro" is little (State: used, and when used refers to skin color. A Negro is a black man. If we use the word in the sense in which it is used in the United States, or even in its Brazilian use, it is not possible to say exactly how many "Negroes" there are in Brazil. Figures of this kind are not kept by the Brazilian census. In the year 1830 it was estimated that 71 percent of the people of Brazil were white or of mixed origin, and that 29 percent were Negro. Colonel Arthur Lobo examined 30,000 Brazilian soldiers and reported that they showed the following percentages:

White.....	59 percent
Mulattoes.....	30 percent
Negroes.....	10 percent
Cabocles (mixed Indian and white)	1 percent

In 1922 Professor Roquette Pinto reported that his studies indicated the following percentages to him:

Whites.....	51 percent
Mulattoes.....	22 percent
Cabocles.....	11 percent
Negroes.....	14 percent
Indians.....	2 percent

According to this estimate, there are at the present time nearly six million Negroes of pure blood in Brazil.

in Africa

In Brazil as in other slave countries the places/ from which the blacks came did not matter to those who owned them. Professor Lorenzo Turner of Fisk University has recently made interesting studies to determine where Brazilian Negroes came from. This was possible in Brazil, where it is difficult in the United States, because slavery was not abolished in Brazil until 1888. Turner discovered many Brazilian Negro families who had relatives on the West Coast of Africa - in Nigeria and elsewhere - with which they kept up a regular correspondence. There are still many Negroes in Brazil who hold fast to Mohammedan customs brought by their fore-parents from the Mohammedan Hausa and Fula tribes of the Soudan; and there are religious organizations called "cults" in which practices of the African homeland are combined with the rites of the Catholic Church.

Brazil was discovered in 1500 by the great explorer Alvarez Cabral, who, like Columbus, ~~xxx~~ thought he was on the way to the Indies. In 1494 the Pope at Rome had settled arguments between the Spanish and Portuguese discoverers by dividing the world yet to be discovered between these two Catholic kings. Brazil fell in the part given over to Portugal. The city of Bahia was established ~~xxx~~ in 1532, and six years later the first African slaves were brought in to work sugar plantations. The Indians had proved themselves unfit for the work. Their unfitness was not due to their noble hearts or brave minds which could not endure slavery, as many people have said. The Indian was not physically fit for plantation labor, while the Negro was; the Indian was a hunter and could not adjust himself to the higher type of life met with in settled agriculture, while the Negro on the West Coast of Africa had already been a skilled planter and cultivator.

The city of Bahia - which, because of the reversal of seasons below the Equator, is to Brazil what New Orleans is to the United States, while ~~xxxxxxxx~~ Rio de Janeiro in

the South is to Brazil what New York is to the United States - lies in the northern, hottest, ~~giant~~ sub-tropical region suited for plantations. Bahia therefore became the center of the slave trade. ~~It is believed that 1,350,000 slaves were brought in from Africa to cultivate sugar in Brazil, that 600,000 were imported to help~~ mine gold, and that 250,000 slaves were brought in after 1820 for coffee plantations. A million slaves in addition were brought in to work in diamond mines, in tobacco and cotton plantations, and in other employment. This would make a total of from three to four million Negroes who were brought as slaves to Brazil.

The control of Brazil by Portugal was interrupted from 1580 to 1640 while the home country was a part of Spain. During this time the Dutch invaded and seized parts of the Brazilian coast. In 1640 Portugal regained its independence from Spain and turned anew to the colonization of Brazil.

Brazil is a giant while Portugal is a dwarf among nations. To make any kind of settlement of the interior, great ~~numbers~~ numbers of laboring men were necessary. It was for this reason that Negroes were imported. Portugal, however, never had the resources ~~to~~ to develop Brazil properly.

In 1807 Napoleon's army invaded Portugal. The royal family of the defeated State sailed to Brazil and carried with them the seat of national authority. When the Napoleonic wars were ended, King John of Portugal returned to the home country, leaving behind him as ruler his son Dom Pedro with the title of Regent. The year was 1821, at a time when all of the Latin American colonies were restive over European control, and revolts and republicanism were the order of the day. The Brazilians declared themselves independent of Portugal in 1824; Dom Pedro agreed to a democratic constitution and was named Emperor of Brazil.

~~Dom~~ Pedro the First was obliged to give up his office in 1831. Brazil was ruled by a Regent until 1840 when Dom Pedro II came of age and was crowned Emperor. In 1864 began the long and bloody war in which Brazil, Argentina and Uruguay joined hands against Paraguay. Paraguay and its military efforts were headed by Francisco Solano Lopez; it is said that at the end of this conflict it was hard to find a male left alive in Uruguay who was ~~between~~ between the ages of 16 and 70.

After much agitation, the slaves of Brazil were emancipated in 1888, twenty-five years after Lincoln had freed the slaves of the United States by proclamation. In the next year Dom Pedro II was deposed ~~and~~ and Brazil became the last Latin American country to become a full republic.

The center of Negro population in Brazil is Bahia, in the North. In the Southern provinces of Sao Paulo, Santa Catharine, and Parana, Negroes are distinctly in a minority, thus reversing the situation to be found in the United States where most Negroes are found in the South. This situation does correspond according to climate, as in the United States of America Negroes are found concentrated in the hottest climates - which are in the South - while in the United States of Brazil Negroes are found mostly in the hottest climates also - which are in the North. The Southern States of Brazil have attracted large numbers of immigrants from Europe - German and Italian for the most part - and the coffee plantations of the South have for many years used these immigrants for labor in place of Negroes.

Brazilian All Brazilian historians gladly credit the great part played by the Negro
Negroes as in settling and defending the country. In the early days the backbone of
Soldiers companies engaged to fight the Indians on the frontiers was provided by
Negroes. When the Dutch invaded Brazil in 1624 the Negroes of Bahia and
Pernambuco were organized into regiments to defend the Portuguese settlements. The story
is told of a Negro named Antonio who stationed himself in a tree with a bag of rocks
as a company of Dutch soldiers passed by. Silently and skilfully, Antonio threw rocks

as each Dutchman passed beneath, thus killing the whole detachment. For his services Antonio was cited to His Majesty Phillip III, and his freedom was bought at the expense of the State. A fort was built where the tree stood and named Sao Antonio; the honored Negro was made commandant of the fort named for him.

In the year 1628 the Dutch came again, staying for nineteen years in which the Dutch and Portuguese fought endlessly. In 1645 a Portuguese rebellion against the Dutch broke out in Pernambuco. The leaders of the rebellion were Vidal de Negreiros and Joao Fernandez Vieri. Their most dependable assistant in leading this revolt was Henrique Diaz, a Negro who organized several black regiments. He organized guerrilla raids which kept the Dutch in constant trouble. The Brazilian historian Pombo said of Diaz, "The noble figure of Henrique Diaz was possessed by the soul of a hero. He might well have become embittered by the thought that his generation still conceived color as a stigma which no amount of heroism or moral grandeur could wipe out." The Dutch were finally driven from Brazil in 1648 after losing the battle of Guararapes; Henrique Diaz was fatally wounded in this battle at the head of 1500 black soldiers.

The problem of coping with the Indians and with run-a-way slaves was met in Brazil as in Jamaica and Haiti by organizing bands of "vigilantes" commanded by military men and largely composed of Negroes. In Haiti, for example, the free colored people were enlisted as members of a militia organization called the marechaussee, or the "maroon chasers" - the run-a-way slaves being called "maroons". In Brazil these bands were called entradas and bandeiras. These bands not only protected the frontier settlers against the Indians; they also opened up and explored the riches of the country. The first gold discovered in the province of Minas Geraes was found by a Negro, a member of a bandeira; and the famous diamond which quickened the development of Brazil's diamond fields, the "Star of the South", was also the discovery of a Negro.

At first Negroes were organized in separate regiments; but by 1820 Negroes were brought into the Brazilian armies as part of the regular organizations. In the disorders which led to the declaration of Brazil's independence from Portugal in 1824 a number of Negro battalions were organized and given the name of the Legions of Henrique Diaz, in honor of the black leader of the wars against the Dutch two hundred years before. The adjutant general of this force was Joao Baptista de Faria, an African Negro. When the Emperor Pedro II of Brazil visited Bahia in 1859, Baptista de Faria was given the honor of being the Emperor's personal bodyguard.

In the long and bitter war against Paraguay from 1864-1870 Negroes won great distinction for their bravery, excelling particularly in infantry and bayonet assaults. The Paraguayans fought with great bravery until the manpower of their country was almost exterminated. One of the decisive battles of this war was the capture of Fort Curuzu, when two regiments of Zouaves from Bahia stormed the fort in the face of a deadly fire. These Bahian Zouaves were principally Negroes. The Negro Cezario Alves de Costa was first corporal, then sergeant, in the Seventh Infantry Battalion. He was awarded the Grãzeiro (Brazilian Military Cross for Heroism) for his work in these bayonet charges. The Cadet Antonio Francisco de Mello was a petty officer in the Ninth Infantry Battalion. In the battle of Riachuelo the Brazilians brought gunboats to bear against the fort and Paraguayan gunboats anchored before it. Francisco de Mello led a detachment of soldiers, serving as marines, in boarding a Paraguayan gunboat and distinguished himself by outstanding bravery. He was promoted to the rank of Captain.

Marcilio Dias

In the same battle of Riachuelo the Negro sailor also distinguished himself. He had been a member of the Brazilian navy since 1856. When the Brazilian fleet entered the range of fire of the Paraguayan gunboats, ~~at~~ Dias was stationed at the bow of the gunboat Parahyba as a watch for mines. He was exposed to ~~full~~ the full fire of the Paraguayans, but kept his post although wounded several

wounded several times. He died the next day after the battle. The Navy rendered the fullest honors to him, and his portrait was ordered painted and hung in the officer's messroom of a Brazilian warship. In his memory a school for the ~~shikshas of the orphaned children~~ orphaned children of naval ratings was founded and named the Casa Marcilio Dias.

Andre Reboucas was twenty-six years old and a first ~~lieut~~ lieutenant in the Engineers when the Paraguayan war began. Assigned to the front, he rendered notable service, especially in planning for and carrying out the crossing of the River Parana under heavy fire. Reboucas' daring plan called for the establishment of a bridge-head on the opposite bank of the river by swimmers who towed across a small boat with arms and ammunition. These men entrenched themselves and pontoons were then used to link the two sides.

The various revolutions of Brazil have also found Negroes active in the ranks of fighting men. The revolution of 1932 was assisted by the Legiao Negra do Brasil (Negro Legion of Brazil),² composed of Negroes from Sao Paulo.

The Quilombos and Palmares The Brazilian Negro ~~slave~~ was known as a good worker but a poor slave. There were many slave rebellions in Brazil, as there were, in fact, in all places where Negroes were held in slavery. They were, perhaps, more violent in Brazil and more successful for several reasons. In other places in the New World the slaves were likely to be gathered from many places on the African Coast, and, when brought to America, scattered over many far-distant plantations. In Brazil the slave market at Bahia was so close to Africa and the West Coast that it was customary for shiploads to be collected as units from one tribe or neighborhood; and when sold in Brazil, these slaves were likely to be sold as a unit on the large sugar plantations. As a result, the Negroes in Brazil knew each other and knew each other's native African languages. They were likely to belong to the same secret societies which were so powerful in Africa. Instead, then, of having to deal with the disunity among the slaves which paralyzed slave resistance in the United States, the Brazilian slave owners had to deal with large groups of Negroes united and bound together with common ties of custom, language, and tribe.

The run-a-way slaves in Haiti and Jamaica and Guiana were called "maroons" from the Spanish word "marrano", meaning "young wild pig"; for this is what the run-a-ways ate when they ran away into the woods and jungles. In Brazil these run-a-ways were called quilombolas. They established large settlements in the backwoods, far from the settled plantations where they had worked as slaves. These settlements were called "quilombos".

The Republic of Palmares³ as a Negro state organized in Brazil by fugitive Negro ex-slaves. It was not just another "quilombo"; it was a federation of "quilombos" with a standing army and a regular state organization. The locality where this State was founded is near the present day city of Porto Calvo in Alagoas. As early as 1644 Palmares existed. In that year, when the Dutch had occupied Northern Brazil, an expedition against Palmares was led by ~~an~~ a Dutch army led by Prince Maurice of Nassau. This ~~British~~ force was composed of Dutch soldiers and a large number of Tapuyos - the Tapuyo was a black soldier in the service of the government as against his own rebellious people. The Dutch found themselves faced with an army of six thousand Negroes. According to the old Dutch histories, ~~the city of Palmares was laid out in the form of a long street; the entire community was surrounded by a high picket fence made of large stakes. There were two gates, heavily guarded. A Church and council chamber were situated in the center of the town. The ruler was a King who ruled wisely and justly, allowing no medicine men or witch doctors in the community. If any member of the community tried to escape, however, he was tracked down and killed to prevent news of the quilombo from reaching the outside world.~~ the city of Palmares was laid out in the form of a long street; the entire community was surrounded by a high picket fence made of large stakes. There were two gates, heavily guarded. A Church and council chamber were situated in the center of the town. The ruler was a King who ruled wisely and justly, allowing no medicine men or witch doctors in the community. If any member of the community tried to escape, however, he was tracked down and killed to prevent news of the quilombo from reaching the outside world.

Another leading capital of the Negro federation of Palmares was ~~the~~ Cerro Real do Macaco. In this city there were fifteen hundred houses, and the town was protected by a high fence of stakes tipped with iron. The town was ruled by a king-like official called "the Great Master", who had a large palace, a cabinet, and a bodyguard of regular soldiers.

The Dutch, and later the Portuguese, were intent on destroying the quilombos. They were public nuisances to the government because they provided places of refuge for the run-a-way slaves from the plantations; and they were also a danger to travellers and to settlers on the frontiers of civilization. Several expeditions were brought against the cities of Palmares. Each managed to burn the houses of the quilombolas, but the men and women of the towns would fight savagely until their cause was lost, and then disappear in the forest where they would soon rebuild another quilombo. An expedition in 1676 reached the chief city of Palmares only to find that the Negroes had already burned it and escaped to the forests.

The Portuguese then offered peace on terms that the Negroes would be allowed to remain free, to have land given to them, and to live in peace; but that they would not keep their arms. Many agreed to do so; but Zambi, a noted quilombola, refused. The Portuguese in the North finding themselves unable to suppress Zambi, they sent to the South for help from the bandeira leaders of Sao Paulo. The reinforcements underestimated the Negroes, however, and were completely defeated. Zambi had built a fortress more than a mile in circumference, and according to the Portuguese "was so well fortified as to be lacking only in artillery." Three staked fences had been built around the fort, and the Negroes had the greatest confidence in its strength.

Finally an army of seven thousand men was brought together. Palmares was besieged from 1693 to 1696. It is said that ~~the~~ the Negroes supplied their fortress with food and water by means of a secret underground river which flowed underneath the fort, and, while unknown to the Portuguese, provided easy entry and exit to the besieged Negroes. A Brazilian historian spoke of the three-year siege of Palmares as the siege of "Black Troy"; the Negroes astonished their enemies by their courage and resourcefulness. The Portuguese managed to breach the walls of the fortress in 1696 with rude cannon brought from sailing ships at the coast. ~~Zambi~~ Zambi, the leader, and his ~~chief~~ principal officers refused to surrender. They retreated slowly to a high cliff in the center of the town, and, with defeat clearly unavoidable, threw themselves to death on the rocks below. A Portuguese in the enemy army wrote of this act, "it revealed a spectacle to our army which inspired the profoundest awe."

Palmares was in reality an African State set up in Brazil by Africans who adopted the customs of their home land. The King was aided by a council of chieftains. The citizens were obliged to give absolute obedience and discipline to the ruler; they could address him only on bended knee. The chiefs formed a council to try all cases of criminal behaviour. Murder, adultery, theft and desertion were all punished by death.

Brazilian Negro in Politics Many years before Negroes were freed, in 1688, they and their descendants took part in Brazilian politics. There were many free Negroes, and organizations of blacks were founded even in slavery times to buy the freedom of slaves.

Jose de Patrocinio was a member of the city council of Rio de Janeiro and as an active agitator for the abolition of slavery. Andre Reboucas, the noted soldier of the war of 1864-1870, was also a leading figure in improving rural life, encouraging the immigration of Europeans to Brazil, and the development of an educational system. Carloso Vieira, a mulatto from Parahyba, was a judge and represented his State (then province) in the Brazilian Congress until his death in 1883.

Milo Pecanha was born of undoubted Negro origin at Campos in the State of Rio de Janeiro in 1864. He finished law school in 1887 and entered politics as a firm advocate of emancipation. He served in the Brazilian congress from 1890 to 1903, when he was elected a member of the Senate from Rio de Janeiro. He became Vice-President of Brazil and on the death of President Alfonso Penna became the President of Brazil in June, 1909. This post he held until the election of a new president in November, 1910. In 1912 he was reelected to the Senate and later was made the President of the State of Rio de Janeiro. He died on March 31, 1924.

Negro Culture in Brazil The contribution of the Negro to the cultural life of Brazil is readily acknowledged by Brazilians of all conditions of society. In Religion the great majority of Brazilian people are believers in the Catholic faith. There are a number of "sects" in which the descendants of Africans have kept many of the features of their old African religious beliefs and combined them with some of the rites and observances of the Catholic church. Since Brazil stands for religious freedom in its Constitution, these sects continue to petition that they be put on the same footing with other beliefs.

The great festivals and carnivals of Brazil show the influence of the Negro people upon the culture of the country. There are great popular plays which are taken from the history of the old quilombos, and portray Congo king and queens, ambassadors, princes, princesses, and witch doctors. One great display begins with the procession of the leading figures through the main streets, with a play being given at the end of the parade. The quilombo play of Alagoas annually recites the history of the ancient state of Palmares. The Africans brought both their religious and war dances to Brazil, and these, preserved and improved upon, have been taken over by the rest of the world. The batuque and samba dances are of direct African origin. The maxixe dance of world popularity is a development of the Brazilian samba, to which were added elements of the Cuban Habanera and the European Polka. The greatest living Brazilian composer, Heitor Villa Lobos, has drawn heavily on Negro themes in his music. One of the first great musicians of Brazil was himself a Negro, Father Jose Mauricio, born in Rio de Janeiro on September 22, 1767. Owning a beautiful voice, he played the violin and harpsichord (early piano) without being taught. On his ordination as a Priest following his graduation from the seminary, Father Mauricio was made the Choir Master at the Cathedral of Rio de Janeiro. He was a skilled organist and choir director. He composed many noted items, and ~~was recognized as a composer of high ability~~ his ability to compose as he played was world famous. He wrote a book on Harmony that became widely popular before his death on April 16, 1830.

Caldas Barbosa, the mulatto son of a Negro woman from Angola, was one of Brazil's first and outstanding popular composers. After winning fame in Brazil he went to Portugal where he gained new honors. Among notable present day musicians are Francisco Bragan composer, organizer of the Symphony Concert Society of Rio de Janeiro, and professor of composition in the National Institute of Music. Jose Raymundo da Silva is professor of musical theory in the same school. Manuel Augusto is a piano master and a famous teacher in the Conservatory of Recife.

The list of Negroes prominent in painting, in sculpture, in Architecture, in literature and science is too long to be noted here in this brief sketch of Brazilian life. It is sufficient to say that if the contribution of Negroes, and those of Negro blood, to Brazilian cultural life were erased from the annals of the country, there would be great gaps in every field of human endeavour. The Negro has been and is an integral factor in Brazilian life; and this contribution is bound to flow on, far into the future.

The Bush Negroes of Guiana - A Stiff-necked People

In the equatorial lands of Guiana, close neighbors to Brazil, are to be found one of the most interesting Negro peoples of the World. These are the Bush Negroes - the descendants of Negro slaves brought to labor in the sugar plantations of the colony two hundred years ago, and who, refusing to be slaves, and finding the jungle back-country much like their own African homes, slipped away into the jungles to establish villages of their own.

The Dutch portion of Guiana is ~~inhabited~~ also called Surinam. In the period from 1600 to 1796, before the Dutch were swamped in Europe by Napoleon, Surinam was one of the wealthiest of colonies. Fabulous stories are told of the ~~show~~ made by the planters, and of the effects of the climate upon the temper both of the ~~masters~~ and of the ~~men~~ slaves. The slaves fled up river from the coast, and it was death to the Dutch soldiery who attempted to follow them; death from poisoned arrows, death from disease, death from

ambush. The Dutch sent expedition after expedition after the Djuka or Bush Negroes, but not one succeeded. The Bush Negroes themselves carried on an endless war against the plantation sections, raiding them, stealing women and supplies of gunpowder.

So fierce is the tradition of freedom among these Negroes that ~~when~~ the scholar Herskovitz says that when a Bush Negro drinks with a white man, he gives the toast "Free!" The Bush Negroes regard mulattoes as "White", as in former times the Dutch companies which tried to suppress them were made up both of regular Dutch soldiers and of Mulatto recruits from the coastal regions. ~~Miscellaneous~~

The accounts of the cruelties practised by the Dutch toward the Bush Negroes they captured, and the treatment of captive Dutch by the Bush Negroes, reads like a nightmare of human invention of the worst side of human nature. Among the milder tortures which the Dutch - and the Bush Negroes - inflicted on their captives were hanging by the thumbs for days, or until death came; sticking small lighted splinters in the flesh of the victim; burying the victim in the hot sand up to his neck; and exposing upon a public place as a limb was chopped off day by day until the victim was armless, legless, and finally - the last step - headless. The three worst crimes among the Bush Negroes today are incest, murder, and informing on a ~~black~~ Negro to a white man.

Following the example of the Brazilians with the quilombolas, and that of the English with the Maroons of Jamaica, the Dutch finally made peace with the Bush Negroes in 1820. By this peace they agreed not to receive fugitive slaves, to return those who should flee to them, and in place of raiding the settlements to receive an annual "graft" consisting of gifts of gunpowder, knives, and the like.

The Bush Negroes of Guiana have great interest because they have preserved their old African customs better than any other Negro people in the New World. Their religious customs, their language, and their social organization are parts of Old Africa transplanted to the New World. Africa itself has greatly changed as a result of European influence; but the Bush Negroes of Guiana have not changed because they are even further from modern European life than the people of Africa today. The "bush" country has no roads, its rivers are broken by rapids, and there are no landing fields for aircraft.

There are three tribes among the Bush Negroes - the ~~Sarama~~ Saramacca, the Awia, and the Boni. The town and coast Negroes of Paramaribo remained enslaved until 1865. After the slaves were set free, the planters of the Guianas began to search for labor. They brought in large numbers of Chinese, of Hindus, of Maltese, and Madeirans from the Madeira Islands. It was found that none of these people made good field laborers. The work still has to be done by Negroes or by no one at all. The presence of these mixed races, however, has resulted in some of the most remarkable race crossings in the world.

THE STORY OF THE FRENCH NEW WORLD - HAITI AND THE
GREAT BLACK SOLDIER, TOUSSAINT L'OUVERTURE

Haiti, Land of Black Majesty - Discovery by Columbus - Early History - The Maroons - The revolt of the Blacks - Toussaint L'Ouverture appears - His Campaigns against the British - Leclerc destroyed - The "Scorched Earth" in Haiti - Toussaint Betrayed - Haiti after Toussaint.

Haiti has been called the land of Black Majesty. It is today a small and a poor State, with 3 million black people crowded together on ten thousand square miles of land. Much of this land is mountain; the name itself means "Land of the Mountains". Haiti lies on the eastern end of the Island of San Domingo. The neighboring republic of ~~Dominica~~ ^{Dominican} has twice the land area but only half the population.

There is but little to suggest Majesty in Haiti today. The word Majesty means stateliness, dignity, nobility. The Haitian people are poor; they ~~are~~ suffer from tropical and other diseases; they are ragged, and their houses are frail and ~~rickety~~ rickety. They have passed through many revolutions, and their last bloody revolution in 1915 was followed by an American occupation which lasted until 1934.

Yet in ~~his country~~ Haiti there stands on a mountain peak one of the great citadels of the world, and by it the Palace of Sans-Souci - a great stone structure built by Henri Christophe, King of Haiti, now in ruins, but yet one of the great wonders of the world in the manner of its building. The man who built that castle was a black man; but however great his building, it was not as great as the mind and work of the greater black man under whom he served - Toussaint L'Ouverture, the first man after George Washington to lead an American Republic to freedom from a European state - the first man to free the slaves of a nation - the first man to give a military reverse to the armies of Napoleon Bonaparte.

The most striking page in the history of France in the New World, and, indeed, of Negroes in the New World, is that written by the slight, somewhat ugly, black genius who was Toussaint L'Ouverture - Toussaint the Saviour as his people called him. ~~Toussaint~~ ~~was born in 1758~~ In the days of King Louis the Fourteenth of France, ~~when~~ ~~from~~ France reached far across the seas in competition with the growing English, Spanish, ~~and~~ Dutch and Portuguese states. After years of warfare, the Treaty of Ryswick in 1697 confirmed the right of France to great territories in the New World. France had Canada; France had the eastern third of ^{San Domingo} ~~Haiti~~; France had Martinique; France had ~~and~~ Louisiana, belonging to the French

Of all of these rich lands, the tiny part of Haiti was the richest. Columbus had discovered the Island in 1492, and called it Hispaniola. He found one million Carrib Indians living there. There was a little gold. The natives were gentle, trusting, and soft. In twenty-five years the Spaniards had practically exterminated the natives. They died from new diseases, such as Syphilis and Tuberculosis, which they got from the Spanish; they died because they could not stand the terrible labor in the Spanish mines. When they were dead, and the gold of the mines gave out, the Spaniards rushed off to the rich gold fields of Mexico and Peru. Negro slaves had already been brought to Haiti to take the place of the Indians. The Negroes did not die like the red men; they lived under the most terrible working conditions.

After the gold fever and the gold had gone out of Haiti, the colony declined. The ^{part} ~~western~~ ~~half~~ was almost deserted. Into this space some French, driven out of the Island of St. Christopher by the Spanish, almost accidentally came in 1530. At first they ~~gave~~ did little but raise cattle; but as they discovered the fertility of the soil, they cleared ground and brought in thousands of African slaves. The Peace of Ryswick gave the French undisputed possession of the western half of the island, while the Spanish kept the

eastern two-thirds. The French, with the aid of their Negro slaves, soon found that the western part of Santo Domingo was the richest colony in the world. The soil was fertile, and the sugar plantations of the island supplied half the tables of Europe. The planters lived in great luxury; they imported the costliest wines, furniture, carriages and clothes from France, and sent their children to the homeland to be educated. They themselves spent long vacations in France, and the wealth of the planters from Santo Domingo and from Martinique was beyond compare in the richest capital of Europe - Paris.

There were two classes among the white people of French Santo Domingo, and the people with Negro blood were divided into the free blacks and the mulattoes, and the slaves, almost all of whom were blacks. The white French were divided into the rich planting class, and a poorer group who lived in the cities and towns. There were about thirty thousand whites of the planting class, about ^{ten} ~~thirty~~ thousand of the poorer whites, from thirty to forty thousand free blacks and mulattoes, and more than ^{half} a million enslaved blacks.

There had always been trouble in Haiti with the slaves. In 1720 alone one thousand fugitive Negroes fled to the mountains, where they hid themselves away in caves hard to discover. The Haitian militia, the mare-chaussee, had compulsory service for the mulattoes. They would chase down the runaways, and kill numbers of them; but they were never able to wipe them out. In 1765 the French made a treaty with the fugitives, offering them their freedom if they would no longer take in runaway slaves.

In 1758 a Negro named Macandal set himself up as a prophet, and plotted to free all of the slaves at the capital city, Le Cap, or Cape Haitian. He was discovered and executed.

Then, in 1789, came the beginning of the French Revolution in the mother country. The new ideas of Freedom and Equality and Human Brotherhood began to sweep around the World. In France a society was begun, called the "Amis de Noirs" - the Friends of the Blacks. The purpose of this society was to work for the freedom of slave Negroes in the French colonies. In the society were the great leaders of the French Revolution. At the same time the planters organized and brought pressure upon their powerful friends whom their wealth had gained at the French court.

A young mulatto, Sgt. Vincent Oge, was sent to Paris by the Haitians of his class to plead for citizenship for them. At first it appeared that the mulattoes ~~would~~ would have been perfectly satisfied to receive full citizenship rights for themselves, with no great concern for the blacks. When Oge returned to Haiti, he was arrested and executed with cruel tortures. The public execution did more harm than good, for it spread the news of what was in the air to the slaves in a way nothing else could have done.

Then the storm began to break. On August 23rd, 1791, the Negroes in the fertile plains around Le Cap revolted. In two months 2000 white people - men, women, and children - were massacred; 180 sugar plantations and 900 other plantations were burned - houses, barns, everything that could be burned; and 60,000 rebel blacks killed in revenge and punishment.

A string of blockhouses were built around the plain outside of the Capital at Le Cap, designed to keep the revolting Negroes away. The mulattoes revolted in the West and South, where in the Valley of the Artibonite many had amassed great wealth and had large plantations of their own. The Revolution in France, growing ever more radical, sent radical delegates to Haiti to rule in place of the supporters of the monarchy who had charge. The Royalists in the South arose and laid siege to Port-au-Prince, where the radicals had control. In October, 6,000 Republican soldiers arrived from France, and landed at Le Cap. They came both to restore order in Haiti and to place control firmly in the hands of the radical delegates. As the Republicans came in, two battalions of Irish soldiers who had supported the King and guarded Le Cap, left the Island for the British possession of Jamaica.

Haiti was now in complete disorder. The rebellious Negro slaves in the country made the cities the only place of refuge for the planters, except in the West and South where the mulattoes and the whites had joined together to suppress the slaves. There were factions even among the mulattoes; Andre Rigaud, a mulatto, formed an army of radical mulattoes and tried to conquer Port-au-Prince and the "Grand Anse" district which were controlled by the planters. He failed to do so. In 1793 another detachment of 2000 French

sailors arrived. The gathering force of the Negroes in the North at last exploded; and they broke the string of blockhouses protecting the city of Le Cap and surged into the town. The French retreated, fleeing to the great fleet assembled in the harbor, and burning the town to the ground as they left. Ten thousand refugees fled - some to Cuba, and from there to New Orleans; some few to Savannah and Charleston in the United States, but with the greatest number going to Baltimore.

The news of the slave uprising caused great fear and consternation throughout the New World. It was rightly felt that if such a dangerous outbreak were allowed to go unchecked and unpunished, slavery was dead. There was also greed in the air; both the Spanish and the English saw a chance to take possession of the richest colony in the New World. The Spanish invaded Haiti from the East, while the English landed at the Port of Jeremie with 9,000 soldiers. The royalist sympathizers in the South welcomed the English; and the great Mole St. Nicholas, the strongest fort in the New World, was turned over to the English by the Irish garrison without a shot being fired.

In the wars that were wrecking Haiti, the utmost savagery prevailed on all sides. If men, or women, or children of the planting class were captured, they were tortured with the greatest cruelty by the rebellious slaves; if ~~the~~ a slave should be captured by the planting class, he was executed with the greatest pain that ~~could~~ his captors could imagine. The whites, the mulattoes, the blacks, were all filled with a spirit of revenge which has seldom been seen. As an example, one army of whites and mulattoes in the South, loyal to the King and, of course, opposed to emancipation, threw away their white badges which marked their side, and instead pinned on their hats ~~black~~ ~~black~~ black badges - badges made from the ears of captured slaves!

By the end of the year 1793 the entire Northern peninsula as far as Port-de-paix was given over to the English. The English were also invited to Leogane and Saint Marc, where the planters, giving over any hope for rescue from the radical French, preferred English to Republican rule. In 1793, also, came news from France that the French National Convention had decreed the emancipation of the slaves in all French possessions. The English seemed about to conquer the entire part of San Domingo not possessed by the Spanish. They were marching one column North from the Grand Anse to Leogane; they marched another column South toward Saint Marc; and an English ~~army~~ ^{fleet} was sent to Port-au-Prince.

Toussaint At this moment ~~the~~ a small, somewhat howlegged little black man appeared on the scene. Toussaint had already been active in the uprising. He had been a Lieutenant of Boulman during the first rebellion in 1791; it is said that Toussaint had in fact gone secretly to France, where he had been in touch with the French "Amis de Noir" - Friends of the Blacks. He was widely respected among the blacks, and this respect was to grow to a kind of worship.

In 1794 Toussaint was in command of an army of 4,000 blacks which had taken service with the Spanish. In April he left the Spanish service to take a commission as Brigadier General in the French Army of the Republic. To Toussaint went the job of driving the British from the North of Haiti, while the mulatto, Rigaud, was given the same task in the South. They had a great ally who ~~now~~ appeared on the scene - Yellow Fever in the midst of the English.

Despite preliminary defeats, by December Toussaint had driven the English out of the Western cordon of blockhouses, while Rigaud had taken Leogane. The Spaniards had been forced to retire to their portion of the island. In the Spring of 1795, 2000 more English troops arrived, and in October 7000 more at the Mole of St. Nicholas, under General Howe. The reinforcements availed not. Both Toussaint and Rigaud received large supplies to equip their peasant armies from the United States. With sugar at a premium, American vessels crowded the ports of Haiti under Haitian control, eager to get sugar and to give Toussaint gunpowder, muskets, and cannon in exchange with which to fight the British.

In May, 1797, Toussaint had cleared the North almost entirely of the English; and he was about to attack in the South. He was made commander-in-chief of all forces loyal to the French in the Island; and the English made a truce. Of the fifteen thousand English troops landed in Haiti from 1791 to 1796, only three thousand were yet alive. In 1798

General Maitland evacuated the entire island of all British troops, with the exception of the Mole St. Nicholas. One thousand men - out of fifteen thousand - were ~~left~~ left alive.

With the truce with the British in 1797, Toussaint L'Ouverture was left free to reorganize Haiti. He knew that he had bitter battles yet to fight. He knew that Napoleon would not leave his black general, however French, in control of France's richest colony. He knew that the British waited only for a chance; and he knew that the mulattoes had been educated to despise the blacks. He knew, in short, that there was no peace, and that the freedom of his people hung by a narrow thread.

After emancipation, the former slaves had stopped working. The great campaigns from 1791-1798 had already almost destroyed all settled life in an area smaller than the State of Connecticut, or equal to about the fifth part of the State of Georgia. Toussaint began the brief period during which, in peace, he had time to prepare for the lasting freedom of his black brethren. He sent letters to the whites and to the mulattoes who had left Haiti, inviting them to return. He opened trade with the United States, selling his sugar and rum for plows - and for guns and gunpowder. He sent a nice letter to Napoleon Bonaparte, stating his loyalty to France. And he made the ~~slaveholders~~ Negroes return to work.

He could do the last because the Negroes loved him, and trusted him. This black man, this former slave, this ex-coachman, was one of them; and Toussaint never had the trouble with the Negroes his successors had. Toussaint never had to resort to brute force, to harsh discipline, to make the Haitian peasant work for him. This is, perhaps, the greatest sign of his greatness.

In 1798 the French Government, now dominated by Napoleon, sent another agent to Haiti. This was General Hedouville. He had a great reputation for being able to settle trouble in "hot spots". Hedouville had made peace between Revolutionary France and the rebellious natives of its province, the Vendee. He came to find Toussaint busy with plans to throw the English finally out of Haiti. Hedouville thought of himself as Toussaint's superior officer; Toussaint paid no attention to him, and made a peace with the English by which General Maitland agreed to turn the Mole St. Nicholas over to Toussaint, and to leave Haiti, bag and baggage. Angered by the audacity of the black general of France, Hedouville began to plot with the mulatto general of the South, Rigaud, with the idea of putting Toussaint out and placing Rigaud in control.

It may be well here to say that Toussaint L'Ouverture's enemies always accused him of being "crafty" and cunning. If one understands the character of his enemies, it is plain that a man without craft or cunning - in other words, a man like a lamb, which Toussaint was not - would not have lasted five minutes in the Haiti of his day. There are other words for the qualities described by "craft" and "cunning". One of these words is "wise". It is clear that Toussaint clearly saw through every trick of his enemies, be they black, mulatto, or white; and his reputation for "cunning" arises from this fact.

What happened next justifies Toussaint's reputation. Napoleon Bonaparte was making great changes in France. In the island close by Haiti where French rule prevailed - Martinique - there had been no Toussaint. The planters had paid little attention to the decree emancipating the slaves in Martinique. They had suppressed the rebellious tendencies of the Negroes, and the whites and the mulattoes had worked together to keep the slaves down. In 1798 it was plain that Napoleon planned to institute slavery again in Martinique and in Haiti. In Haiti the Negroes learned of these plans, and they rose in revolt. That Toussaint knew about it is evident. Hedouville fled for France on October 30th, 1798.

In 1799 Toussaint, following Hedouville's departure for France, ~~announced~~ publicly stated that the mulatto Rigaud was a traitor, and that he had been dealing with the French agent to restore slavery in Haiti. Toussaint gathered an army of ten thousand men at

Port-au-Prince to destroy Rigaud and his mixed planter-mulatto-French army. Rigaud gained the fort at Leogane through treachery. The mulattoes of the Artibonite rose against Toussaint the Black and his Black Army. A number of mulattoes with whom Redouville had been familiar horse-trading rose in revolt in Le Cap, aided by some blacks.

In the year 1800 Toussaint fought the enemies at home as he had before fought those from abroad. He threw an army into the Artibonite and quickly brought it to reason. He dashed to Le Cap to give his personal authority to the suppression of the revolt there. He sent his trusted lieutenant, Dessalines, to the Mole St. Nicholas where the garrison had declared itself for Redouville and Rigaud. Returning from Le Cap, Toussaint held off Rigaud's efforts to relieve Jacmel while Dessalines was sent to attack that strong point. Jacmel was commanded by Pétion, a mulatto later - after Haiti's great days - to appear as President of Haiti. On March 11, 1800, Pétion cut his way out of Jacmel, leaving the South in Toussaint's hands with the exception of the tip of the southern peninsula. On July 5, 1800, Toussaint crushed Pétion and Rigaud at Aquin; and on July 31 Rigaud too ship from Les Cayes with 700 men, bound for safety in Cuba. Fifteen years later these refugees - mulattoes for the most part - were to play an important part in the Battle of New Orleans, and, with the experience they had gained in war against Toussaint, help Andrew Jackson throw back the British on the Plains of Chalmette.

In January of 1801 Toussaint decided to take over the Spanish part of the island. In fact San Domingo was French, having been ceded to the French in 1795; but no change had been made in the local authority. Toussaint sent his brother Moyse with an army into the North, while he crossed the mountains in the center and made directly for the capital city on the south-east coast. The Spanish part of the island was completely occupied within thirty days. Toussaint now found himself with an experienced army of twenty thousand men, and in complete control of the entire island.

Spies - and Toussaint, through his close touch with the people, knew it as he knew everything that went on in the island - were making constant reports to France. The black general knew as before that it was but a matter of time when he would have to fight the French. In 1801 alone Toussaint brought from New York 25,000 muskets, 16 cannon, and other war material. He "shook down" his army and prepared his staff - his chief lieutenants being Christophe and Dessalines - for the ordeal that was to come.

Napoleon Bonaparte had made peace with the English at last. He was now ready to deal with the impudent black man who had made himself the ruler of France's richest possession. The plans which had been set on foot in the shipyards of Brest and Boulogne and Marseillaise, for the proposed invasion of England, were now turned to outfitting a fleet to reconquer Haiti. The finest veterans of the campaigns in Europe were assembled at Bordeaux, and at Brest. On December 14, 1801, a great fleet sailed from Brest. Napoleon had placed his own brother-in-law in charge, General Leclerc. The fleet consisted of more than eighty vessels and carried 20,000 soldiers.

Napoleon Bonaparte was a great man. Toussaint L'Ouverture was also a great man. Napoleon had given very detailed directions to Leclerc as to what he should do when he got to Haiti. Napoleon's instructions have come down to us in all of their detail. To read those instructions enables one to understand the kind of mind that Napoleon had - the kind of ^{mind} that helped him conquer all of continental Europe. To read those instructions, also, and to see what Toussaint did to defeat them, is to enable one to understand how great, indeed, a man was Toussaint L'Ouverture. Napoleon had studied the problem of Haiti in great detail. In this, doubtless, he had been aided by his Creole wife from Martinique, the lovely Josephine. Josephine knew in detail of the factions which separated the mulattoes and blacks in her native Martinique, and she must have known that Haiti in many ways was like Martinique.

In his instructions to Toussaint, Napoleon told him to land a few troops at on San Domingo and then to proceed with the great majority of his fleet to Haiti. He was to land and immediately begin to make friends of the black generals. He was to give them money; he was also to cultivate the mulattoes, and to play upon the jealousies between the blacks and the mulattoes. He was to confirm all of their ranks at first, (ies until they had gained confidence in Leclerc. Then he was to arrest all of the Negro officers above the rank of Captain, and send them immediately to France by a fast ship.

Napoleon warned Leclerc that if he did not succeed in making friends with the generals of Toussaint's army within three weeks, the whole campaign was lost.

Early in 1802 Leclerc arrived off Cape Samana with 12 thousand men. Toussaint was watching from a sea-side hill; he, too, had excellent "intelligence". As the fleet came to anchor, Toussaint took horse and rode rapidly away toward Haiti. Once there, he posted 5 thousand men in the North under Christophe. He placed 11 thousand men in the West and South under Dessalines. He left 4 thousand men in Spanish Santo Domingo.

Leclerc, still looking for eight thousand men in a part of the fleet which had been delayed, made his own dispositions according to the plans set by Napoleon. Admiral Rochambeau was to ~~make~~ seize Port Dauphin with 2 thousand men. Bordet, with 4 thousand men, was to sail around the Mole St. Nicholas and seize Port au Prince. Leclerc, with the 5 thousand men left, was to sail to Le Cap and take it over. The plan called for Rochambeau to strike south from Port Dauphin; Leclerc to strike for the Western Plains and roll Toussaint, if he dared resist, to the mountain foothills where Bordet, coming up from the south, was to crush him.

This plan depended on speed, and Dessalines ruined the speed. He ably defended the West; the French were obliged to use artillery to force him out of every position; Dessalines would resist strongly until the French had brought up their guns, and then retreat to a new strong point close by. The French would then bring up their guns again - but slowly, owing to the terrain; Dessalines would endure the blasting for a while, and then retreat again. Toussaint had written to Dessalines,

"Do not forget that while we are awaiting that rainy season which should rid ourselves of our enemies, our sole resources are destruction and fire. Remember that the land bathed by our sweat and blood must not furnish the slightest sustenance to our enemies. Destroy all, burn all; so that those who come back to force us back into slavery may have ever before their eyes the image of the hell which they deserve."

This was the "scorched earth" policy, a century and a half before England and Russia discovered it. It was also the rare wisdom of a General who knew that his chief ally was General Yellow Fever, due in April with the coming of the rains.

Toussaint's generals began to give up. Maurepas was the first, in the North, leaving Toussaint's rear exposed. Toussaint had retreated to the Artibonite, from where he could reach the mountains to the East in case of defeat. On March 2nd the French attacked the strong point, Crete-a-pierrot, a gateway to Toussaint's refuge. The fort was located on a steep cliff backed against the Artibonite river. It was garrisoned with 1200 men. Four assaults by Leclerc's men cost the lives of 2 thousand men. On March 24th the garrison, still almost wholly intact, broke through the French lines and escaped.

Toussaint had done what he had intended to do. He had delayed the French until April, and the rainy season - and the rainy season (and yellow fever) had now come. He followed his generals by surrendering on May 1, 1802. Leclerc had won the campaign. In the winning, however, he had lost 5 thousand men killed, and another 5 thousand badly wounded. He had less than ten thousand men left of those who had reached the island in January and February. In short, in a campaign lasting three months he had lost half of his effectives.

Two weeks after Toussaint surrendered, Yellow Fever struck the French. Leclerc's ten thousand able-bodied men went down to five thousand by June. Three thousand were dead of the fever, and 2 thousand in hospitals. On June 11th Toussaint was invited to dinner by Leclerc. He came - there was little else to do. After the dinner Leclerc had him escorted on board a French vessel, which immediately hoisted anchor and sailed for France. Once in France, Toussaint asked to see Napoleon; the first citizen of the blacks, he wrote, wished to meet the first citizen of the whites.

Napoleon would not see him. Meanwhile letters arrived by each mail from Leclerc. They were anxious letters, full of fear. He asked Napoleon for more money, for more soldiers, for more equipment. He asked Napoleon to put Toussaint in the most distant jail in France; if he were placed in a prison near the coast, Leclerc was sure that this devilish black man would escape. Napoleon obliged him only on the last point. He sent Toussaint to a dungeon in the Jura mountains of Switzerland. The cell was below the level of an adjoining lake, and was always damp. Toussaint quickly developed tuberculosis. His jailer had orders from Napoleon not to give him any medical attention. And so Toussaint L'Ouverture, the Saviour, came to his death in a clammy cell of a Swiss jail while four thousand miles away the sunny skies of Haiti shone down upon the grave of General Leclerc, the brother-in-law of Napoleon Bonaparte.

For Leclerc preceded Toussaint in death. Toussaint died on April 17, 1803. Leclerc had died on November 2nd, 1802, - less than five months after he had ordered the little bowlegged black man spirited away to a cold dungeon in France. In the June when this order was given, Napoleon had openly restored the slave trade, and slavery in French colonies. The black generals who had come over to Leclerc began to wilt away from his side. The Negroes and the mulattoes too began to desert the ranks. Leclerc saw his entire army disappearing - by desertion and by yellow fever. He wrote letter after letter to his mighty brother-in-law. On October 7th, three weeks before his own death, Leclerc wrote to describe his terrific casualties. In the 7th regiment, 1,395 men had come out from France with him ten months before. Of this number 83, half-sick, were on duty, 109 were in the hospital, and the rest were dead.

Before Leclerc died in November, the black generals - Dessalines, Christophe, Moyse - had made open revolt against the French. Early in 1803 Napoleon sent 10 thousand more men. Rochambeau made the mistake of importing hundreds of blood hounds from Cuba. All of Haiti was aflame. The dogs, they knew from sad experience, were intended for chasing escaped slaves. The new reinforcements helped the French to force the Negroes back toward the mountains. Then, on May 12th, came other salvation. The brief peace of France and England ended with war. Napoleon had planned to send 30 thousand more men to Haiti; they found themselves blockaded at Brest by an English fleet. In October the blacks recaptured Les Cayes and Port-au-Prince. On November 10th, Rochambeau sailed out of the harbor of Le Cap, to surrender to the British fleet blockading the port; he preferred the tender mercies of the English to those of the Haitians.

And so, six months after Toussaint died in a Swiss prison, his work had been done. Out of 15 thousand British soldiers landed in Haiti between 1791 and 1796, only one thousand left alive. Out of 50 thousand French soldiers, and 10 thousand French sailors who landed on the island from 1791 to 1803, only 5 thousand men saw France again. It is true that General Yellow Fever was the finest commander on the side of Toussaint; but in terms of battle casualties the little bowlegged black coachman had inflicted tremendous losses on the best troops of Europe; and he had skilfully organized his people to fight, and bide their time, and fight, and bide their time again, while the disease he knew would help him had time to reach the front. The little black general had matched wits with the great Napoleon, and the little black man had won, dead though he was in a Swiss dungeon. Napoleon had use for those fifty thousand veterans, nine years later in the Peninsula campaign; he had use for them in Russia, and he sorely missed them at Waterloo.

There is another and a final American angle to the story of Toussaint L'Ouverture that needs to be remembered by citizens of the United States. In 1779, when the American colonies were engaged in dire war with the mother country, the treaty of alliance with France against England brought a French Fleet to the aid of the United States. At the Battle of Savannah, Count d'Estaing had in his forces 800 Haitian volunteers, all blacks and mulattoes; and every other engagement d'Estaing fought in American waters was with the aid of these Negro Haitians. It is said that both Toussaint and Christophe were members of this force, and gained their military experience from it.

Toussaint had encouraged the old planters to return to Haiti. He had required the Negroes, though not as slaves, to return to their work. With the French forever out of the country, Dessalines, on the 1st of January, 1804, proclaimed the independence of the Haitian Republic. He made himself Governor-General and on the same day published another decree that took back all of the promises of kind treatment which Toussaint had made to the planters. There followed the final great forced migration of French planters and their mulatto sympathizers who feared the black general. Many of the San Domingans went to New Orleans, where they were to take part with Andrew Jackson in the battle of New Orleans in 1815, against the British.

Dessalines was killed in 1806. He was succeeded by Christophe in the North. Christophe had himself crowned the ~~Supreme Ruler~~ King of Haiti, and ruled for fourteen years with strong and absolute cruelty. Christophe is sometimes laughed at because of the ways in which he tried to imitate European royalty. Since he had no black royalty to draw upon for his court, he created dukes and duchesses - two of these creations being the Duke of Lemonade and the Duchess of Marmalade. The names are ridiculous in English, but the names were those of districts in Haiti and Christophe was in fact following good old royal custom; his action ~~was~~ made no more ridiculous nobility than the old and real one - the Dukes of Limburg - sounds to American ears.

But Christophe was no fool to be laughed at by lesser men. In the fort and the palace called Sans Souci, built upon a height near Cape Haitien, it has been well described in an official publication of the United States Department of State "which must for all time be regarded as a marvel of human achievement." Christophe ruled with such cruelty that at last his closest friends fell away from him. It must also be said in his defense, as in defense of other Haitian rulers, that at all times he had arrayed against him, and against the future of Haiti, the powerful enmity of great men in great powers who were as malicious and scheming as Napoleon had been, and who wished nothing better than to see Haiti - the black republic - come to grief. At the last Christophe was left alone in his great palace, and he shot himself - with a silver bullet, according to the Haitian superstition which states that it had been prophesied that Christophe could be killed only by a silver bullet.

Meanwhile the mulatto Petion had returned from exile and established a separate State - largely a mulatto state - in the South of Haiti. Petion and Christophe fought each other until Petion's death in 1818. Boyer succeeded Petion, and, after Christophe's suicide, brought the two divisions of Haiti together into one State. Boyer was overthrown by revolution in 1843, and from that date Haiti suffered many and frequent violent revolutions. It was such a change in the government which, in 1915, led to the occupation of Haiti by American Marines. The American forces withdrew in 1934, and since that time Haiti has pursued a peaceful course marked by close cooperation with American policies.

Haiti differs from Martinique, the remaining French possession in the West Indies. In Martinique the Revolution never happened; the island remained in the hands of the wealthy families which had owned its great plantations before the explosion of France in 1789, and slavery was abolished only in 1831. Haiti is the Black Republic; Martinique is a smaller island where white and mulatto and black people still maintain, though not legally, and without great ~~xxx~~ bitterness, their separate classes. Indeed, the cleavage

between blacks and mulattoes may yet be dimly seen in Haiti. The people of Martinique have kept their connection with France, and black men from that tiny island have held high political office in the highest legislative circles of the French Republic. One Martinique black man, General Eboue, was the Governor of the French colony of Lake Tchad-Equatorial Africa at the moment when a choice had to be made between Vichy France and the Free France of De Gaulle. To the great advantage of the United States and her allies, the choice of this Martinique black man lay with the De Gaullists.

However poor the Haitians may be, this island rings through history with the echo of the black majesty, not of the side-show burlesque of Christophe, but with the genuine stateliness of the great Toussaint L'Ouverture. Great orators have lauded his generous and humane character, his military genius, his ability as a builder of a State. He left to his people a land they could call their own; and in the one hundred and forty years since he was tricked away from them by Napoleon, those black xs folk - poverty and disease stricken though they may be - have increased their numbers from one half million to three million.

This was, indeed, a very great man.

THE NEGRO IN THE BRITISH WEST INDIES

-obeah-

History - Slave Trade and Characteristics of Jamaica Slavery - The West Indies-English Trade - The Maroons - Emancipation - Military Use of Jamaica Troops - Government - Economic Problems -

The Island of Jamaica was discovered by Columbus on his second voyage of discovery in 1494. Columbus returned in 1503. The Spaniards made early settlements in Jamaica, but the island had little of the ~~richness and abundance~~ wealth in gold and silver and precious stones which interested them. The fine harbors of Jamaica were valued by the seamen of the time, and Port Royal became a great center for the pirates who preyed upon the commerce of the Spanish ships carrying gold from Mexico and Peru to the homeland.

The English attacked ~~Jamaica~~ the Spanish in Jamaica in 1596, and again in 1638. England greatly desired to have one of the larger islands of the Carribean; Spain had Cuba, Santo Domingo, later shared with the French, and Puerto Rico. By order of Cromwell Jamaica was attacked by a large ~~xx~~ English fleet in 1655 and captured by them.

In addition to Jamaica the English managed to acquire smaller, though valuable, islands which first served the purpose of plantation areas for the production of sugar and rum and other tropical produce, and later served as valuable coaling stations for the English commercial fleets. Bermuda was settled in 1609 by English colonists bound for Virginia who were wrecked on the island. The Windward islands, the most eastward of the West Indian islands, form a chain leading northward from the South American continent. They include Barbados, Grenada and the Grenadines, St. Vincent, St. Lucia, and Dominica. Trinidad lies off the coast of South America and it the most southerly of the West Indian Islands.

The early struggles between the European countries for these islands led to unending raids and counter-raids in which the utmost cruelty was practiced. When an English fleet captured a Spanish island, or vice versa, a common punishment was to roast the ~~negatives~~ leading captives alive on spits. Whole populations might be seized and condemned to labor for life in the mines, or on the plantations. Following the battle of Drogheda in Ireland, Oliver Cromwell shipped thousands of his Irish captives to Jamaica and to Bermuda, where they labored in the fields as "white slaves". In many of the English islands descendants of these people still live; and it is sometimes surprising to find pure Negroes from these districts speaking with the most natural ease an Irish brogue as pure as any to be heard in the Old Country. When Cromwell died and the Stuart family was restored to power in England, for revenge many of the Cromwell supporters were likewise sent abroad to the West Indies to work on the plantations as "white slaves". The smaller keys and islands became the resort of pirates of all nationalities. Even in peace time a merchant ship was likely to be attacked by a pirate of his own or of some other nationality. The pirates would set up headquarters in some quiet cove, and bring to this place stolen goods and stolen women. The pirates included English, Dutch, Spanish, Portuguese, Negroes, and every combination thereof.

The prosperity of the British West Indies, as ~~without~~ in colonies of other countries, was founded on the trade in slaves with Africa and the trade in plantation crops with the homeland. The chief slave trading centers in England were Bristol, Liverpool, and London. The English outfitted ships with articles which they sent to Africa to exchange for slaves. These articles included: woollens, linens, cotton goods; silks; calicoes; ready made clothes, muskets, bayonets, cutlasses, gunpowder, shot, wrought and unwrought brass and copper, lead, pewter, wrought and unwrought iron, hats, capes, rum, spirits (gin), brandy, tea, sugar, and food of every kind. In 1800 these exports to Africa amounted to \$4,000,000 yearly, equal in purchasing value to ten times that much today.

Since it was common practise to require all trade between a homeland and its colonies to be carried in ships belonging to that homeland, it may be said that the foundation of modern trade, and of modern industry in Europe and America, was laid on the foundation of the trade in African blacks. Some idea of the size of the Jamaica trade may be obtained

from a table showing this trade in the year 1787-1788, when the plantation system in the colonies was at its high peak:

JAMAICA-ENGLAND TRADE, 1787-1788

Place to Which Ships sailed from Jamaica	Number of Ships	Weight of Produce Carried (In Thousands of Cwt.)					
		Sugar	Rum	Molasses	Pimento	Coffee	Cotton
Great Britain	242	824	1,890	2.3	606 (lbs.)	3.7	1,900
Ireland	10	7	106	—	2.3	—	6
American States	133	6	327	1.8	6.4	2.5	—
British American Colonies	66	3	207	2.3	—	.1	1
Foreign West Indies	22	—	—	—	—	—	—
Africa	1	—	—	—	—	—	—

In the same year, inbound trade showed 686,657 pounds (value; ^{pounds} equal to about \$5.00) of English goods, 72,275 pounds of goods of foreign manufacture, 138,500 pounds of produce from English islands, mostly salt fish for slave food; 213,800 pounds in articles from Africa (5,345 slaves valued at 40 pounds each), 30,000 pounds from British colonies in America, including 20,000 quintals of salted fish from Newfoundland; 190,000 pounds of food from the United States, including corn, wheat flour, rice, and lumber; 16,000 pounds worth of wine from Madeira; and scattered items.

In the United States, when anti-slavery feeling became high, people from the South would tease the New Englanders who then were bitterly opposed to slavery by reminding them that the rich men in New England - the fathers of most of the anti-slavery workers - had grown rich in the trade on "rum and Negroes". In a sense this was true. Jamaica would get slaves from Africa; use these slaves to produce sugar and rum; send the rum and sugar to New England and to England, where it bought trade goods for exchange in Africa; and New England and England would then use their trade goods to buy more slaves to send to Jamaica to make more rum to buy more trade goods and the like.

Ginger, Cacao (cocoa), Tobacco, Mahogany, Logwood, were other West Indian products shipped abroad.

As this trade was going on all over the New World, including Brazil, the other West Indian islands owned by other countries, and in the Southern United States, its great size and value may be imagined. In 1786 it was said that 38,000 slaves were brought from Africa to the New World in English ships; 20,000 in French ships; 4,000 in Dutch ships; 2,000 in Danish ships; and 10,000 in Portuguese ships.

The slave trade to Jamaica, then owned by the Spanish, began in 1502. In 1517 Emperor Charles V granted a monopoly to a royal company to supply 4,000 Negroes each year to Hispaniola, Cuba, Jamaica, and Puerto Rico from the Portuguese settlements. The preference for Negroes over Indians was due to, first, the fact that the Indians were already nearly exterminated; and, second, the plea of Bartholomew de las Casas, the Catholic Bishop of Chiapa in South America, who was a devoted friend to the Indians. He saw how cruelly the Indians were treated, and how rapidly they were being exterminated. He therefore recommended to the Emperor and to the Pope that Negroes be used instead of Indians; and his plea was successful. In any case the substitution would have taken place. Without the Negro, the Indians would soon have been totally exterminated; and it was soon found that a Negro could do the work of four Indians.

1563

In 1563 the famous fighting sea captain and even sometime pirate, John Hawkins, made the first voyage to Africa of an Englishman seeking slaves. He picked up 300 slaves on the Sierra Leone coast, sold them in Hispaniola (later Haiti) and sailed for England with a cargo of hides, ginger, sugar, and pearls. His ship was the "Jesus", of 700 tons. His voyages were so profitable, and yielded such a large "cut" to the royal family,

which was a partner in the venture, that he was knighted by Queen Elizabeth.

Each gang had an overseer, usually a white man who was from a lower social class than the owner of the plantation. The gangs also were provided with a Negro slave called a "Driver". It was his job to set the pace, and sometimes to administer whippings called for by the owner or overseer. The gangs went into the fields at dawn. Breakfast was eaten in the fields after two hours of work. At noon, the Jamaica slave was allowed two hours off for dinner. Dinner usually was bread and pickled fish. The gang slave could rest, dance, or work for himself in the time left in this off-period. When the two hours were up, the gang went back to work and remained in the fields until dark. On Sundays the slaves heard preaching from the plantation preacher.

From 1760 to 1786, more than 600,000 Negroes were brought to America from Africa. Not all of them remained in America; for the island was a way-station for supplying other islands, and the trade in the Southern United States. Estimates of the total number brought into all British colonies, from 1680 to 1786, vary from 2 million to 10 million. In 1771, a year of the peak slave traffic, 192 ships sailed from English ports to Africa. Forty went to Senegambia for 5,310 slaves; 56 to the Windward coast for 11,960 slaves; 29 to the Gold Coast for 7,525 slaves; 63 to the Bight of Benin for 23,301 slaves; and 4 to Angola for 1,050 slaves, a grand total of 47,146 slaves. Of the ships, 107 sailed from Liverpool, 58 from London, 23 from Bristol, and 4 from Lancaster.

The manner of conducting the slave trade on the African coast has been described above. Once arrived at a Jamaica harbor, the ship-captain placed the slaves in a sort of "rest camp" to fatten them up. He advertised in the papers and by crier in the streets, and by handbills circulated among the planters. On the day of the slave auction, buyers gathered and bid the slaves in by auction. The planters and their overseers were quite expert in determining the value of a slave; they were allowed to feel muscles, look at teeth, and examine the skin of the slave to see if he was healthy, firm, or diseased; and to determine his age. Once sold and sent to the plantation, the new arrivals from Africa were temporarily boarded out with old Negroes too old to work any longer in the fields. The old Negroes "broke in" the new recruits and taught them of the new life they were to live.

On the plantation the slaves were divided into five groups. The older men and women, too broken down to work, were either allowed to sit around, or given the care of the younger children while their mothers were in the field. One gang of the most able-bodied was assigned to do field work. A gang of young boys and girls were organized to do lighter work in the fields. The very young children remained in the slave "quarters". A very select group of slaves, picked for their good appearance, intelligence, or good manners, were assigned to work as "house servants". These were the cooks, the waiters, the valets, the housemaids, the coachmen, and the butlers. They were a preferred class and there was much jealousy between the "field hands" and the house servants.

Each field gang had an overseer, usually a white man who was from a lower social class than the owner of the plantation. The gangs also were provided with a Negro slave called a "Driver". It was his job to set the pace, and sometimes to administer whippings called for by the owner or overseer. The gangs went into the fields at dawn. Breakfast was eaten in the fields after two hours of work. At noon, the Jamaica slave was allowed two hours off for dinner. Dinner usually was bread and pickled fish. The gang slave could rest, dance, or work for himself in the time left in this off-period. When the two hours were up, the gang went back to work and remained in the fields until dark. On Sundays the slaves heard preaching from the plantation preacher.

Jamaica slaves showed that, like slaves everywhere else, they wished to be free. In 1760 there broke out in the St. Mary's plantation a dangerous slave revolt that was quickly suppressed, but which created grave fears in the minds of the planters. A Koromantyn Negro (a tribe noted for their fierceness; probably a member of the Ashanti tribe) named Tacky, who had been a chief in his native Africa, found himself in a group of one hundred newly imported slaves, all from the same region of the Gold Coast, and all speaking the same language. They had been kindly treated by the ~~plantation~~ overseer, and they did him no harm. Tacky organized a group and armed them by falling upon a sentry at a nearby arms depot. Next they went to a plantation house where some white slaves were asleep. All of these they killed, and the story was later told that they drank the blood of their victims mixed with rum. Altogether 40 people were killed before the planters took up arms.

To make an example of the Koromantyn Negroes, who were always rebellious, severe treatment was handed out to the rebels. Tacky was killed in the woods. One of the ring-leaders was burned at the stake. One who saw the burning wrote, "the wretch that was burnt was made to sit on the ground, and his body being chained to an iron stake, the fire was applied to his feet. He uttered not a groan, and saw his legs reduced to

ashes with the utmost firmness and composure; after which, one of his arms by some means getting loose, he snatched a brand from the fire that was consuming him, and flung it in the face of the executioner."

Two men were hung up in irons at the scaffold in Kingston. They hung there for seven days without food or water without making a complaint; "but diverted themselves all day long in discourse with their countrymen, who were permitted, very improperly, to surround the scaffold." These men died on the eighth and ninth days of their hanging.

As Brazil had its runaway slaves called quilombolas, Jamaica like Haiti had its Maroons. When England took over Jamaica in 1655, about 1500 slaves left the plantations and fled to the mountains. From there they would frequently steal forth on raids to steal cattle, pigs, supplies of all kinds, and women. They increased in numbers both naturally and by growing numbers from the fugitive slaves from the Plantations who ran away to them. In 1663 the British offered a full pardon and 20 acres of land ~~in every parish~~ to every maroon who would surrender. This they refused to do. Juan de Bolas, one of the original maroons who had lived under Spanish slavery, was made the Colonel of a black regiment and was sent to subdue the maroons. He was ambushed and killed. During the next forty years the Maroons continued to grow in power and audacity. By the year 1730 no less than 44 acts had been passed in the Jamaica legislature for their control, and a million and a quarter dollars spent for their suppression. In 1734 two regular regiments were sent to suppress them. The white and black militia was also called out. Captain Stoddart, in command, projected and executed a successful attack upon the maroon town of Nanny. Only one path led there through steep mountains. The Captain stole up to the path, and opened fire with several portable swivel guns he had. This destroyed the Maroons on the Windward side of the island.

The maroons never fought openly. They skulked on the edges of plantations, cutting off stragglers, and killing careless soldiers one by one. At night they would set fire to cane fields, outhouses, and even mansions. They knew every secret path and hiding place in the bush. In 1737 the legislature, realizing that flying columns of soldiers did no good, set up a chain of blockhouses near the Maroon haunts. Several bloodhounds were stationed at each house. A special company of free Negroes was formed, and the Governor sent to Yucatan for 200 Indians. These Indians, noted for their ability to follow tracks in the jungle, with their black allies and the dogs, were the ~~fighting~~ "shock" troops now assigned to chase down the Maroons. The Maroons were obliged to ask for peace in 1738; each chief was given 1500 acres of land, and was to build a settlement for his people on it. The Maroons were also to be paid \$15 for each fugitive slave they could catch or surrender to the authorities. The Maroons lived faithfully by the terms of this agreement and thereby earned the undying hatred of the enslaved Negroes.

In 1795 two Maroons were publicly whipped for minor offenses. Insulted, the Maroons sent word to the settlements that they intended to take up arms for revenge. The authorities hastily made peace. It was talked about in Jamaica that the Maroons were urging the slaves to rebel as they had just done in neighboring Santo Domingo against the French. One thousand regular British soldiers were sent for, and it was decided that for the best interests of all the Maroons should be sent out of Jamaica. The Maroons refused to give themselves up. They burned their villages and took to the mountains. A detachment of regular soldiers sent to their old settlement was ambushed, fifty men being killed and a hundred wounded. The Maroons retreated further into the mountains, hiding their women and children in caves, and raiding plantations for food. Finding that the regular soldiers could not cope with the Maroons, the authorities sent again for one hundred bloodhounds, to Cuba. In the meantime the Maroons had been cut off from their only supply of water. They surrendered, and it was decided to send them as far from Jamaica as possible - to Halifax, Nova Scotia. Six hundred in number, the Maroons were given \$125,000 and embarked for that cold and dismal shore. They were kindly treated on their arrival, and to this day their descendants may be seen in this unexpected place.

Obeah Much of the stout resistance of the early African slaves to their condition was due to the fact that they brought with them from Africa practices and beliefs which

bound them closely together. Among these practices was that of Obeah, closely joined to "Voodoo" and to secret religious societies. Obeah is the practise of magic; but the knowledge of it was confined to the Africans, and in its possession they found a kind of secret fraternity which enabled them to keep secrets from their masters.

Obeah is still practised in South America and the West Indies, and, indeed, in the United States of America. Within the last ten years newspaper reports have appeared of people descended from German settlements in Pennsylvania who believed, and still practiced, the art of "Hexing" - placing witchcraft - on people. Superstitions die hard. Obeah is found in almost its original form among the Negroes of the Bush in Guiana, in certain districts in Haiti, in Jamaica, and elsewhere. With growth of intelligence and education, belief in Obeah, as in any other superstitious practise, of course declines.

The term Obeah means magic. An obi-woman or a obi-man is one who practices magic. The word comes from the ancient Egyptian, where ob meant Serpent. When Moses, at the command of the Lord, cast down his staff before the Egyptian Pharaoh, and the staff turned into a Serpent, he was practicing obeah - magic. In the past in the West Indies and in the United States the practitioners of obeah were native Africans, who brought their "black magic" with them directly from the homeland. It was customary to carry on the making of spells and the "conjuring" of people at the midnight hours. The ~~native~~ Africans, and many of their descendants, believed ~~in~~ absolutely in Obeah; and in this belief was the secret of its strength. If a man or woman believed that he or she could be bewitched, then the psychology of his world was such that he was bewitched. The power of faith is tremendous; and the power of belief in a community where every one else believes the same thing, is also tremendous. The ~~writer~~ writer once met an English missionary who had lived on the West Coast of Africa for twenty years, and who, in spite of his firm stand for Christianity, had come to have the utmost belief in the power of witchcraft - of obeah.

One, then, who thought himself bewitched, would give himself up for lost. It is also probable that the witch-doctors who practiced Obeah both in Africa and in the New World had a very keen knowledge of poisonous plants and of disease, and at least occasionally resorted to this knowledge to prove a point. Since ~~the~~ a person wishing to bewitch someone would come to the obi-man for help, and the person who feared that he was bewitched also came to the obi-man for help, the obi-man, like modern fake fortune-tellers in American cities, knew everything that was happening.

Let us imagine a typical case of obeah. A man learns that he is being bewitched, or is threatened with witchery. He has a headache. He may have had a thousand headaches, but this one he immediately credits to the working of the obeah. His sleep, his appetite, and his cheerfulness desert him. His strength begins to fail. His imagination is filled with bad dreams; his features show his utter hopelessness. He stops eating; what is the use? - and at last he dies.

It is true that the growth of scientific knowledge has made such a case rare today; but that obeah has had such an effect is not to be doubted. The charms, lucky stones, rings, and other articles sold in quantities in American cities, indicates that there are yet many people who have a firm faith in magic. Obeah was greatly dreaded in the West Indian slave islands. Strict laws made death the penalty for its practise. On one plantation, where a large number of slaves died mysteriously, an old woman was discovered to be the head conjurer, or obi-woman. Her stock in trade included objects now sold openly in almost every city in the United States, to the poorer classes of white natives, foreigners, and Negroes: all kinds of feathers, small bags, egg-shells, cats teeth, human teeth, and the like. The old conjure-woman was ~~about~~ to ~~be~~ be burned to death; but we are told that the authorities, taking pity on her, instead sent her off to Cuba. It is more probable that the governmental officials themselves were almost as afraid of the powers of the old woman as the slaves themselves.

Almost nothing in human life helps us understand the slowness ~~of~~ to be expected in changing human nature and beliefs as the survival of superstitions that were old ~~a~~ four thousand years

Emancipation The slaves of the British West Indies were emancipated by agreement, the home government agreeing to pay the masters a fixed value for the slaves they owned.

In 1838 255,000 slaves were freed in Jamaica at a cost of \$29,000,000. It has often been thought and said that the United States might well have saved itself a disastrous and bloody war if the same policy had been adopted in ~~that country~~ that country. The economic effect on the West Indies islands, however, was as severe as was the War in the United States on the South. Slavery ~~in~~ had, for so long a time, been the principal economic foundation of the entire system, that its disappearance immediately ruined every other feature of the old life. In Jamaica the slaves could not be induced to work as hard as they had under slavery. The planters could no longer get capital from England. They found themselves still competing with slave labor in other sugar growing lands, notably the United States and Brazil.

Following emancipation, wages for day labor in Jamaica were cut from fifty to twenty-five cents a day, and then to sixteen cents. No effort had ever been made to educate the Negro ~~to~~ to a life of independent thrift and labor. He had neither the habits nor the education to permit him to enter free life on a progressive and self-reliant basis. ~~Added to this was the fact that with the emancipation of the slaves Jamaica lost~~ Added to this was the fact that with the emancipation of the slaves Jamaica lost her preferred treatment in English markets.

The result was an economic decline from which Jamaica has not yet recovered, after one hundred years. Education has slowly been extended to the masses and there has arisen a class of intelligent and well-educated black people who have risen in the economic scale. Jamaica, however, has a class system, as found in many other ~~English~~ colonies with an English or European background. The upper class blacks in Jamaica enjoy political, economic, and other forms of equality with the small numbers of white people resident there. The great masses of the people, however, are desperately poor, and the small island has shown for a long time the effect of over-population. It is almost universally true in the West Indies - in Cuba, in Jamaica, in Haiti, in the Virgin Islands, and elsewhere - that the black population has grown faster than the resources of the islands could care, economically, for their growth. In Haiti there are three million Negroes crowded on ten thousand square miles of land, much of it mountainous; in Jamaica there are more than a million Negroes crowded on a little more than four thousand square miles of land. As a contrast, only three million people live on Georgia's 58 thousand square miles of land.

To relieve the crowded conditions of the homeland, many Jamaican Negroes have migrated - many thousands to the United States, where settlement has been made principally in New York City; and others to Panama, where they were the great labor force in the building of the Canal, and to other places in the Caribbean Sea. With all of its defects, the situation in Haiti, for the common peasant, may have been the best; the land belongs to the poor farmer, and he uses the land, not to grow ~~many~~ plantation crops for export which must compete with the other plantation crops of the world, but to grow food for himself and for his family.

Jamaica Soldiers Free Negro regiments were organized in Jamaica to fight the Spanish as early as 1685. 2 General Pakenham's army at the battle of New Orleans had two regiments of Jamaica black men. After emancipation regular Jamaican units were organized which have seen service on many distant battlefields. These men were found particularly useful in the long Ashanti wars on the West Coast of Africa, and again, during the first World War, in Africa where white troops could not stand up under the conditions of heat and disease existing there. The service of these troops in building and policing the British Empire is a story that deserves detail telling in itself.

CHAPTER XII.

THE NEGRO IN THE UNITED STATES - HISTORY

Negroes and Spanish Explorers - Negroes in the Atlantic Colonies - The Cotton Gin and the Westward Extension of the Cotton Kingdom - Louisiana Purchase - Emancipation in the North - The Anti-slavery movement - The Missouri Compromise - The Civil War - Reconstruction - The Agricultural Revolution in the South - The Industrial Revolution in America - The Boll Weevil and the First World War - Urbanization of the Negro - Migration of the Negro - Population Trends - Occupations

THE NEGRO IN THE UNITED STATES - HISTORY
AND

Negroes and Spanish Explorers - Negroes in the Atlantic Colonies - The Cotton Gin and the Westward Extension of the Cotton Kingdom - Louisiana Purchase - Emancipation in the North - The Anti-slavery movement - The Missouri Compromise - The Civil War - Reconstruction - The Agricultural Revolution in the South - The Industrial Revolution in America - The Boll Weevil and the First World War - Urbanization of the Negro - Migration of the Negro - Population Trends - *occupations*

The first Negro slaves brought to the English colonies in what is now the United States came to Jamestown, Virginia, in 1619. Negroes had been in other sections almost a hundred years before. The Negro Alonzo was the pilot of the *Mina*, of the first fleet of Christopher Columbus. The early Spanish explorers of the New World had with them Negroes upon whom they depended for their courage and hardihood in exploring the dangerous jungles of Mexico, Panama, and Peru. In 1539 several Negroes landed in Florida with De Soto, and marched with him through what is now Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi. One of these Negroes, according to the account kept by the recorder of De Soto's journeys, stayed with the Indians in Alabama, took a wife, and became one of the first settlers from the Old in the New World.

In April, 1528, a party of Spaniards landed at what is now Sarasota Bay, Florida. The Indians attacked them, they suffered from thirst, they were reduced to eating their horses and one another. Only four of these men managed to escape after terrible hardships, and after covering the immense distance from Florida to Texas, from where they reached Spanish Mexico in 1536. One of these four men was a Negro, Estevanico, or "Little Stephen", the slave of Andres Dorante. The three Spaniards took the first chance to go back home; the Negro, Estevanico, was bought by the Viceroy of Mexico to keep one of these experienced explorers in Mexico. In 1539 the Spanish Captain Coronado was sent to explore the Northwest territories; and Estevanico was made the guide of a detachment in charge of the priest, Father Marco de Niza.

The expedition was searching for the seven famous "Cities of Cibola", located in what is now New Mexico, and said to have great stores of gold - that which the Spanish were eager to die for. The old accounts differ as to what happened. Estevanico did go ahead of the main party, and got a great number of turquoises and women from the Indians. He came finally to one village, however, where the Indians thought him to be a spy; and he was put to death. Estevanico was indeed a "character", and the accounts left of him by the Indians and the priests indicate as much. One wrote, "It seems that the Negro did not get on well with the friars (priests), because he took the women that were given to him and collected turquoises, and got together a stock of everything. Besides, the Indians in those places ~~showed~~ through which they went got along with the Negro better, because they had seen him before. This was the reason he was sent on ahead to open up the way and pacify the Indians, so that when the others came along they had nothing to do except keep an account of the things for which they were looking."

On the Atlantic seaboard the development of English colonies after 1607 resulted in the bringing in of many Negro slaves. Tobacco and Indigo and Rice were the only plantation crops at first, and for this reason Negroes were not used as widely as in the West Indies where sugar provided a tempting and rich source of profit. In the early days in Virginia, white slaves were almost as numerous as Negro slaves. It was many years before the English colonists in Virginia made a difference between the two kinds of servitude, and decreed that all children born of Negro slave women should be slaves for life, while the children born of white women slaves should be free. The first case in the Virginia courts regarding slavery was brought by a Negro who sued another Negro to get his freedom, claiming that he was being held unlawfully in slavery beyond his time of apprenticeship.

The tobacco plantations in Virginia, and North Carolina, required large numbers of

slaves; and the rice and indigo plantations of the coastal country in South Carolina and Georgia required others. Cotton culture also began to grow rapidly in the Southern colonies. In Louisiana the French and Spanish introduced sugar cultivation in Louisiana. In the Northern colonies there were a great many Negroes, but there were no plantations; small farms rather than big plantations were the rule. The Northern Negro slave, as a result, was principally a house servant; and slavery never got a foothold in the rural districts of the North. City life has always run counter to slavery; the slave has more freedom in the city, he gets more contact with others, and as a result is more difficult to keep as a slave.

Early slavery in the Southern colonies of North America was quite similar to the conditions described in the British West Indies. There were 50,000 Negro slaves in the (now) United States in 1710, 220,000 in 1750, and 462,000 in 1770. This was a small number considering the great extent of the territory covered, the numbers of the white people, and the large concentration of blacks in the West Indian colonies. The center of Negro population in 1790 was in Northeastern Virginia, not far from Washington's plantation at Mount Vernon; indicating that Negroes were distributed almost evenly in the Northern and Southern seaboard States.

In 1796 came the invention of the cotton gin by Eli Whitney. Before this invention, and before the invention in England at about the same time of machinery for spinning cotton, every process in raising cotton and in turning it into cloth had to be done laboriously by hand. With machinery now at hand to take the seeds out, and to spin it into cloth, cotton became the cheap clothing of the world, instead of the most expensive. In turn this made possible the development of great plantation areas in the South where cotton for the world could be raised.

At this time the Revolutionary War had been fought and won, the American colonies had become free from England as the United States of America, and the ideas of human freedom spread through the world by the French Revolution had profoundly affected American life and thought. Throughout the Northern states laws had been passed emancipating the Negroes in State after State. There was considerable feeling in the South that slavery should be abolished there. There can be only one answer to the question as to why this was not done; ~~that~~ slavery was profitable in the South, it was not profitable in the North.

The opening up of the West and Southwest was quickened by the purchase of Louisiana - including the great Mississippi Valley - from France in 1803. It has been said that Napoleon Bonaparte had sent his great army under Leclerc to Haiti with the idea of making a rapid end of Toussaint L'Ouverture and his black army, ~~and~~ then, transferring the army to New Orleans and Louisiana, establish the might of France firmly forever in the Mississippi regions. But Napoleon's army, as we have seen, withered away in Haiti, and when war broke out between the English and the French in 1803 Napoleon had no choice but to keep French Louisiana from falling into the hands of the English by selling it to the United States.

The War of 1812-1815 was but another milestone in the steady sweep of settlement - and slavery - into the Southwestern states. After long and bitter border warfare, the Indians were moved from Georgia, Florida, Alabama, and Mississippi, out to the West in the Indian territory - Oklahoma. Here they could no longer harbor fugitive slaves, as the Seminoles and Creeks did in Florida, Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi; for the story of a tribe like the Seminoles is in reality a story of Negroes fleeing for freedom to the woods just as did their fellow Maroons in Haiti, Jamaica, ~~south~~ Guiana, and Brazil.

Negro revolts in the United States were frequent. They occurred in the cities of New York and Philadelphia as far back as 1721. There were many in Louisiana, where conditions on the sugar plantations were similar to those in Haiti and Jamaica. In 1831 the Negro Nat Turner, of Virginia, believing himself a Prophet of God, led a revolt in Southampton county ~~Virginia~~ that ~~induced~~ threw horror ~~into the hearts~~ into the hearts of the slave states. The memory of the slave revolts in Santo Domingo was still fresh in the minds of all; and an acute fear of what the Negroes might do was planted in the minds of the people of the slave states.

Laws were passed to prevent Negroes from being taught how to read and write; to prevent them from having meetings without permission; and to force free Negroes to leave the slave states. The slave states also developed a ~~strong~~ feeling that the Northern states were doing their utmost to make trouble for ~~them~~ the South; they believed that the North was trying to stir up the slaves to revolt, and that the North, which had emancipated the slaves only when ~~it had discovered~~ ^{it had discovered} ~~that the institution was not profitable in that section~~, the institution was unprofitable in the section, was a land of hypocrites and meddlers.

In the North the movement to free the slaves took on the form of bitter attacks against the institution of slavery, and against the South. Runaway Negroes who crossed the Ohio river or the Mason and Dixon line into Ohio and Pennsylvania were helped by many people. An "Underground Railway" was established to hide these fugitives and to help them on to Canada after the passage of the Fugitive Slave Law. This law provided that since slaves were property, escaped slaves into the North could be followed and recovered by their masters even though they were in "free" states. There were frequent scenes of violence in the North as citizens rallied to ~~not~~ interfere with ~~unofficial~~ police officers sent to the section to bring fugitive slaves back to the masters in the South from whom they had escaped.

In the meantime many free Negroes in the North - including those who had lived there for many years, some who had purchased their freedom in the South and had come North, and others who had run away from slavery in the South - became prominent in the anti-slavery movement. Among these people was Frederick Douglass, an escaped slave, and a great orator. Fred Douglass went all over the North and to England where he talked to great crowds as an advocate of freedom for his people.

What Slavery Was like It is very difficult to say exactly what slavery was like, either to the slave or to the master. The conditions of Negro slavery were different in the United States from those which obtained in Haiti, Jamaica, and in Brazil. It must be remembered that the institution of slavery, by 1861, the date of the outbreak of the Civil War, reached over a vast territory from Virginia to Texas, and from Kentucky to the Gulf of Mexico. In 1861 there were nearly three and one half million Negro slaves, and these slaves were scattered ~~over a vast territory~~. In some sections of the South there were no slaves at all; in the mountains running from Virginia to Alabama the sight of a black face was rare. The great number of white families in the South owned no slaves; they were farmers on small farms, and the slaves were too expensive for them to buy or own. Slaves meant wealth, and wealth meant land.

In some states, by 1861, slavery was dying out as it had already done so in the North. In Virginia and Kentucky the number of free Negroes was rapidly growing. The lands of Virginia, North and South Carolina, and Georgia were being worn out by a system of agriculture which tried only to get as much out of the land as possible, and to put nothing back. Land was cheap; and when a plantation in South Carolina or Georgia became "worn out", the owner could buy large tracts of land at very cheap prices in Mississippi, or Louisiana, or Texas, and transfer his slaves and his plantation operations there.

The great differences between human beings and economic conditions helped make slavery a different institution wherever it was found. In Virginia and Kentucky the slaves tended to be house servants who had been "in the family" for a long time, and who, in the loneliness of the old days, lived on a friendly and familiar basis with the masters. On the great plantations established after 1830 in Mississippi and Louisiana, the holding of slaves and the cultivation of plantations was an enterprise to make money, and everything that happened was directed by the question of making profits for the owners.

The slaves were under a discipline that varied according to the owner and the section. In towns, and in the older states, they might in fact be regarded as "belonging to the family" in many ways. On the great sugar plantations of Louisiana, on the great plantations where cotton was raised throughout the South, there was always a small group of "house servants" who were favorites and who received extra food, attention, and clothing. The great "gangs" of field hands lived in the "quarters" near the big house, and worked much as did the slaves on a Jamaica or Haitian plantation. It was to the interest of the master that the slaves be kept in good health; they were well fed and received medical attention on even these plantations which had the worst reputation. At the height of the slave system, a good, "prime" slave was worth from one ~~thousand~~ thousand to fifteen

hundred dollars, and no owner in his right mind was likely to injure such a valuable property, so as to lower its value.

There are few now to defend the institution of slavery. Its worst effects were both upon the people who owned slaves, upon the slaves themselves, and upon those who, while not owning slaves, lived in slave-owning sections. It is agreed that it is not a good thing for a human being to have undisputed control over another human being, no matter how noble he may be. The slave was made into a person who had no concern for his own future, no habits of self reliance or of hard work, and with no regard for morals or for established family habits. Those who did not own slaves had to compete against the slave. A free carpenter, for example, had to work in ~~some~~ an occupation where a slave carpenter might be hired out to ~~work~~ do the same kind of a job - and where the slave's livelihood depended upon his master, who got his wages. The standard of living of all free workers was lowered by the presence of slaves.

The student of history will remember that human institutions make a deep impression upon the habits, the outlook, the views, and the opinions of those who live in them. These habits, outlooks, views, and opinions are handed down from one generation to another. While Slavery itself was brought to an end by the Proclamation of Emancipation by President Lincoln that took effect on January 1, 1863, it should always be remembered that the mere act of signing a piece of paper could not overnight change the habits, the outlook, the views, and the opinions of those who - white and black - had lived in the slave system. As a father and mother affect the thoughts and habits and opinions of their children, and those children will in turn do likewise with their children, it is clear that many years, and even generations, must pass before the white people and the black people of the United States, whose grandmothers and grandfathers lived in the shadow of slavery, find in themselves that ~~the institution of slavery~~ slavery was really "abolished".

Free In spite of slavery, ~~there were~~ men of surprising attainments were to be found among Negroes the Negro people. ~~Amongst~~ Ira Aldridge, born on a farm in Maryland, became one of the world's greatest Shakespearean actors. He was popular for years in England where his greatest part was that of Othello in the play of that name. He played on the great stages of Europe, and was decorated by the Tsar of Russia. The orator, Fred Douglass, taught himself how to read by watching the marks made by the little white boys on their slates. The wife of his master gave him books and encouraged him. The free Negro Benjamin Banneker was a noted mathematician and astronomer; he corresponded with Thomas Jefferson who commended his work, and who praised his Almanac. In old Southern cities like Charleston and New Orleans there were considerable numbers of free Negroes of wealth and education. In New Orleans this old class included, after the flight from Haiti of the mulattoes ~~there~~ who had been driven out by Dessalines and Christophe, a group of people who had many rights and privileges above those given ~~from~~ free Negroes elsewhere. In 1843 the young poets of this group published a book of poetry, *Les Cenelles*, written in French. This class regularly sent their children to France to be educated; and many of them achieved fame there. One of these was Camille Thierry, who lived at the same time as the famous novelist of Negro extraction, Dumas.

In the North there were many Free Negroes of substance and worth. A favorite residence of George Washington when he was in New York was Fraunces' Tavern, owned and run by a Negro. The Negroes in Philadelphia and New York did especially well in the catering trade, and many large fortunes were made by these families, some of whom are still in the business. Most of the literary efforts of Northern free Negroes were stimulated by the anti-slavery movement, but at the time of the War of the Revolution perhaps the leading woman poet in America was Phyllis Wheatley. ~~She~~ Born in Africa, and brought to Boston as a slave when nine years old, Phyllis was carefully educated by her mistress. She became famous as a poet and dedicated one ~~many~~ poem on "Liberty" to General George Washington, who wrote her a kind and ~~very~~ thankful letter of appreciation.

The free Negroes did not have a pleasant time on the whole. Like the white worker, in the South they had to compete with slave labor. They were the objects of suspicion and distrust in the South, and in the North had to compete with poor immigrant laborers for the meanest jobs. After the passage of the Fugitive Slave Law, many Negroes went to Canada, where a large settlement is yet to be found in Kent County, Ontario, not far from Detroit. The actor Harrison, who played so noble a part in the musical play, "Green Pastures", was

a native of the Kent county colony.

Civil War The principal events of the Civil War, where Negroes were concerned, will be and Recon- treated in another chapter of this work. It may be said that the Civil War struction came about because the United States was a "house divided among itself", and that it could not continue so. It was divided on the issue of slavery, it was also divided ~~among~~ because the South was primarily an agricultural system based on large plantations while the North was becoming, more and more, an industrial system based on factory production. It was thought in the South, during the election of 1860, that if Abraham Lincoln became President that the South would be in grave danger. When his election was assured, state after state in the South withdrew from the Federal Union, and organized the Confederate States of ~~the~~ America. War then became inevitable, for Lincoln had sworn to "preserve the Union"; and when after several months of preparation and useless efforts to reach an agreement, a Confederate battery in Charleston Harbor fired on Fort Sumter in April, 1861, the great Civil War had begun.

The Civil War was begun by Lincoln, as he said, not to free the slaves, but to preserve the Federal authority. The issue of slavery could not long be postponed; and in 1862 Lincoln issued the Emancipation Proclamation, dated to take effect in most areas of the South on January 1, 1863; in others on June 19, 1863; and in still others on August 1, 1863.

This bloodiest of wars - to that date - found brother fighting against brother; enormous destruction of property, particularly in the South; and the total destruction of the economic system of life in the South, founded as it had been on Negro slavery. Most of the wealth of the South was in Negro slaves; by his Proclamation, giving a ~~minimum~~ conservative value of \$500 to each slave, Lincoln had wiped out nearly 2 billion dollars of Southern property values. This fact is important. England had brought about peaceful emancipation in ~~the~~ Jamaica by paying the slave-owners for their slaves. Even this did not prevent the economic collapse of Jamaica. The Civil War - as all wars - would have had a terrific effect upon the South in any case; the ~~immense~~ economic result of the destruction of its system of property values - in Negro slaves - brought the section and all that it had known in wealth and property, completely to ruins.

This fact is the more important because much of the bitterness that was to come later arose from the simple fact of mass poverty; and this poverty included, not only those who had always been poor, but also those who had before been wealthy.

The owners of the land ~~a~~fter the War - and land had been, with Negro slaves, the foundation of all wealth and ownership in the South - found themselves with land that was heavily taxed, and without labor. Many of the Negroes had left the land during and immediately after the Civil War; some had gone to the cities, some had gone to work for the Union Armies, some had been taken to work for the Confederate armies. All were restless, and wished to take advantage of their new freedom. They had before worked because they had to work; now they had to work only to earn their daily bread. The owners of the land, however had no money with which to pay laborers. The ex-slaves had to earn their living, free or not; and the owners had to have people to work on the land.

This mutual necessity led to the beginning of the system of "share-cropping" as a substitute both for ~~in~~ slavery and for day wages. Under the system, a tenant would agree to work for a land-owner to "make a crop". He would be allowed to work so many acres of land - as many as he could work with his family - and, when the crop was sold, get one-half of the proceeds. Now, neither the land-owner nor the "cropper" had any capital - money; yet both had to eat. So the land-owner would go to the bank and borrow money to run him until the crop was made and sold. With this money, or credit, he would buy meal, bacon, and clothing, and advance supplies to the "cropper" during the long season while the crop was being made. He charged these advances against the account of the tenant, and the tenant was to pay him for his "advances" - with interest - at the time the crop was sold, while the land-owner was then to pay the bank from which he had borrowed his capital.

This system, of course, has led to abuses of all kinds. It was a bad system for the owner and for the "cropper". But it was probably the only system that could have been developed in the South after the War, and after the War had eliminated slavery. It is a system that is now fast disappearing, as the result of the use of machinery in Southern

agriculture. Day labor, paid for in cash, is taking the place of "cropping." This change is taking place much faster than many people think. At the same time poor farmers of both races are being aided to purchase farms in many places.

Most attention to history in the South has been paid to the events of political reconstruction. The politicians were the ones who made the speeches, talked the loudest, and got their names and deeds in the papers and in the history books. It is now increasingly realized that political reconstruction was froth on the top of a great wave - the wave being the reconstruction of a political system, indeed, but also of an economic system.

Negroes were active in Reconstruction politics. They held offices of all kinds; Hiram Revels of Mississippi served in the United States Senate, and there were many members of congress. They also held many state offices, but generally were represented by white office seekers in most of the political jobs. Only in South Carolina did Negroes hold a majority in the lower house of the state legislature, white representatives being in the majority in the senate there, and in the senate and the lower house in every other State. The Reconstruction governments, which generally lasted from 1868 to 1876, have often been accused of being wasteful and extravagant. They were. ~~It was a time~~ It was a time of national political corruption, with the Tweed Ring in New York and other corrupt machines everywhere being guilty of waste and public extravagance. These governments, however, did do some good things; for example, they created public school systems in all of the States - though, sadly enough, they had no money with which to make these systems work.

Industrial- It should also be remembered that what was happening - so slowly that few
al Revoluti- could see it - was the so-called Industrial Revolution in America. This was
on in America the change from agricultural to machine production, - from farms to
factories. The South was late, but about the year 1900 this change came into
full swing, also, in the South. It meant the transfer of millions of people from the
farms to the cities; the development of great cities; and a great change in the lives of
the people, white and black.

This change was greatly speeded up as a result of the First World War, 1914-1918, and the effect of the Boll Weevil on cotton in the South. Both struck at about the same time. In order to supply arms and munitions, first to the warring European countries, and then to our own Army and Navy after America entered the war in 1917, the great steel plants and the mines and factories of the North needed great amounts of labor. They had been getting this labor from Europe, in the form of immigrants. This source cut off by the War, these industries turned to Negroes from the South. The Negroes were eager to move both because high wages were being paid in the North, and because a little bug had eaten the foundation out from under their feet on Southern cotton farms. This bug, the Boll Weevil, entered Texas from Mexico about 1905, and by 1914 was eating his way through the cotton fields of Alabama and Georgia.

Attracted by high wages in the North, driven by the ruin of cotton in the South, 2 and one half million Negroes moved, in the years from 1915-1921, from the South to the North. At the same time many others moved from the country to Southern cities. As a result New York, Chicago, Detroit, Cleveland, Pittsburg, Birmingham, New Orleans, Atlanta, and Memphis came to have populations of Negroes larger than most of the great cities of Africa.

The new settlers had many adjustments to make in their new homes. They were poorly prepared for city life, and, after the War boom, were hard hit by the depression that struck the country. Poverty and over-crowded conditions led to high rates of disease and criminality.

The Negro soon showed his ability to adjust himself to new conditions, however. At one time - in 1920 - the death rate in Northern cities was such, among Negroes, that large additions would have been necessary constantly to keep those figures just even. It was said that Negroes could not stand city life, or Northern life. The death rates fell, however, and today Negro death rates in Northern cities are the lowest for any section.

However, death rates for Negroes are still much higher than for white people. Among

the diseases from which Negroes suffer greatly are the venereal diseases and Tuberculosis. Syphilis is much more prevalent in the Negro population, and so is Tuberculosis. Both of these diseases are associated with poverty and ignorance. It is clear that with increasing intelligence regarding the ~~many~~ cause and cure of these diseases, and with increased food, better housing, and better medical care, Negroes will be able to conquer these diseases.

In general it may be said that Negroes have increased rapidly in the United States, but in a proportion less than that of white people. In 1790, when the first census was taken, ~~one~~ one out of every five people in the United States was a Negro. Today, ~~only~~ less than one out of every ten is a Negro. The following table shows population growth in the United States since 1790 by race:

UNITED STATES POPULATION, 1790-1940			
Year	Number of White People	Number of Negroes	Percentage of Negroes in total U. S. Population
1790	3,172,006	757,208	19.8
1800	4,306,446	1,002,037	18.9
1810	5,862,073	1,377,808	19.0
1820	7,866,797	1,771,656	18.4
1830	10,537,378	2,328,642	18.1
1840	14,195,605	2,873,648	16.8
1850	19,553,068	3,638,808	15.7
1860	26,922,537	4,441,830	14.1
1870	33,589,377	4,880,009	12.7
1880	43,402,970	6,580,793	13.1
1890	55,101,258	7,488,676	11.9
1900	66,809,196	8,833,994	11.6
1910	81,364,447	9,827,763	10.7
1920	94,120,374	10,463,131	9.9
1930	108,864,207	11,891,143	9.7
1940	118,214,870	12,865,518	9.8

During the ten years from 1930 to 1940, Negroes in the North increased 15.8 per cent, in the South 5.8 per cent, and in the West 41.8 per cent. In other words, the Negro population in the North at the present rate will double in about forty years, in the South in about one hundred years, and in the West in twenty years. Even at this rate of growth, the majority of Negroes will still live in the South; in 1940 nearly eight out of every ten Negroes in the United States (77.0 per cent) lived in the South, two out of ten lived in the North, and only one out of a hundred lived in the West.

Occupations ~~and~~ As Negroes have moved to the city, their occupations have changed from farm workers to those jobs which city people have. In normal times more Negro women than white women work; this is because of the high percentage of Negro women who work in domestic service. Before the beginning of the World War II, more than two out of three Negro workers were unskilled. There are very few Negro semi-skilled workers, skilled workers, and those with clerical jobs as compared to white people. Yet a study of the occupational figures will show that Negroes are now in a much better economic condition than in 1890, or fifty years ago. Negroes are holding more different jobs, and the average income is higher. Yet the number of Negroes in professional and the higher skill brackets is much smaller than for the country as a whole. During times of depression, the Negro population is likely to suffer, as the workers of the race fall into classes which can best be dispensed with.

All of these facts show very clearly that the future of the American Negro is bound closely to the future of America. Every increase in national prosperity, every addition to the national income, every step forward in economic well-being, is sooner or later

reflected in the ~~im~~important figures of Negro health, education, literacy, and other long-time measures of national and racial well-being. What we call "progress" is not steadily upward; and it takes a very long time for the most important factors in the life of a race to be noticed.

Many things may happen to a nation or to a race from day to day. There may be cyclones, earthquakes, disturbances of all kinds, elections, new movies, newspaper headlines, new radio stars, new football and baseball stars. As this booklet may have shown, one of the most important things in the life of a race or nation is its ability to live and grow - its ability to survive in the midst of difficulties. A race that is growing always has a stake in the future; a nation that is growing always has a reason for believing that it is successful.

The United States of America has shown its ability to live - and the people of the United States have shown their ability to live and to survive.

The Negro people of the United States of America have shown their ability, not only to live, but to grow greatly in the midst of difficulties and handicaps. They have a stake in the future of America, ~~and they themselves have a stake in the future.~~ History is long; we have talked here about times four thousand years ago. Many things may happen to a Nation or to a Race, but if one can keep his eye "way down the lonesome road" of the future, he can see, by ~~making~~ study of the past, the promise that the future has at least no greater dangers than did the past. The future is always worth fighting for.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE NEGRO IN THE UNITED STATES - MILITARY HISTORY:
THE WAR OF THE REVOLUTION AND THE WAR OF 1812

A Negro Woman Soldier of the Revolution - Early enlistment of Negroes - Numbers enlisted - Courage of Negro Revolutionary soldiers - Negroes in the Revolutionary Navy - Negroes in the Army in the War of 1812 - The Battle of New Orleans - "Old Hickory" Praises Colored Soldiers - Negroes in the Navy - War of 1812.

THE NEGRO IN THE UNITED STATES - MILITARY HISTORY:
THE WAR OF THE REVOLUTION AND THE WAR OF 1812

A Negro Woman Soldier of the Revolution - Early enlistment of Negroes - Numbers enlisted -
Courage of Negro Revolutionary soldiers - Negroes in the Revolutionary Navy - Negroes in
the Army in the War of 1812 - The Battle of New Orleans - "Old Hickory" Praises Colored
Soldiers - Negroes in the Navy - War of 1812

The famous Molly Pitcher, who ~~actually~~ served a cannon in the heat of battle, has come down to us as the great heroine and example of female bravery in the War of the Revolution. No better example of the fact that Negroes have been part and parcel of everything that ~~that~~ happened in the United States of America is that another woman - this time of the Negro people - was actually enlisted in the United States Army during the Revolutionary War, and served as a ~~common~~ soldier for more than a year.

This woman was named Deborah Gannett. She enlisted under the name of Robert Shurtleff, in Captain Webb's company of the 4th Massachusetts Regiment. Her enlistment dated from May 20th, 1782; and she remained in the service until October 23, 1783, a period of seventeen months. The Massachusetts Legislature voted her a bounty of \$170 because she was not paid when discharged. She was cited for having "exhibited an extraordinary instance of female heroism, discharging the duties of a faithful, gallant soldier, and at the same time preserving the chastity of her sex unsuspected and unblemished, and was discharged from the service with a fair and honorable discharge." Deborah Gannett, *Negro*, therefore may be said to have beaten the WAAC to public recognition by one hundred and fifty-nine years.

Negroes served in the War of the Revolution both as members of mixed units, and in entirely Negro battalions and regiments. Enlistment was usually limited to free men; slaves entered the service only in those cases where the masters patriotically sent them to the wars, or - unpatriotically - sent the slave as a substitute for himself under the old laws which permitted this practise. As there were more free Negroes in the Northern States than in the Southern States, the Negroes from the North were usually organized in separate regiments, while those in the South were enlisted in the same companies, battalions, and regiments as the white soldiers.

Yet at the very beginning of the War Negroes were not welcomed into the Army. The Continental Congress instructed George Washington not to enlist Negroes, and Washington in turn instructed the recruiting agents not to enlist Negroes. One reason given against enlisting Negroes was that if a slave served, ~~you~~ it could not be expected that this slave would be content to remain in that condition after the War. The English, however, began to use large numbers of Negroes in Virginia and Georgia, in their armies; and great statesmen like John Adams of Massachusetts and John Laurens of South Carolina favored the move. Under these conditions the Continental Congress and George Washington revoked their previous stand, and instructed officers to swear in Negroes - slaves being excepted.

One of the arguments used to obtain this change was the very sound one that Negroes were already in the Army; they had fought at the Battle of Cambridge with the militia, ~~and~~ and there was no sense in barring new Negroes if old Negroes already had served. As the need for manpower grew, even the regulations against slaves were relaxed. It was the custom of the times to pay recruits a bonus on their enlistment, and at the end of three years of service; New York passed a law to enlist slaves and to pay the bonus to their masters, thus giving them their freedom.

There were Negro soldiers in every one of the original thirteen colonies, from New Hampshire to Georgia. Because many were enlisted without record of race, there is no way to determine exactly how many Negroes did ~~serve~~ serve in the Revolutionary War. In a report dated August 24, 1778, Alexander Scammell, Adjutant General, reported the following numbers of Negroes by brigades:

Brigade	Number of Negroes
North Carolina	58
Woodford	40
Mullenburg	98
Smallwood	24
2nd Maryland	60

(Continued)

Brigade	Number of Negroes
Wayne	2
2nd Pennsylvania	35
Clinton	62
Parsons	148
Huntington	62
Nixon	27
Paterson	89
Late Learned	46
Poor	27
Total	755

Four companies of Negroes were formed into a battalion in Rhode Island. Most of the Negroes in New Hampshire of suitable age enlisted. Connecticut had Negroes both in mixed regiments and in a wholly black regiment. Maryland in 1781 enlisted 750 Negroes and incorporated them with existing regiments. There were Negro soldiers from 72 towns in Massachusetts, although there was at first considerable opposition to their enlistment.

Examples of the bravery of these Negro soldiers are numerous. At the battle of Rhode Island the Marquis de Chastellux, a companion of Lafayette, said that "at the passage to the ferry I met a detachment of the Rhode Island regiment, the same corps we had with us the last summer, but they have since been ~~recruited~~ recruited and clothed. The greatest part of them are Negroes or Mulattoes; but they are strong, robust men, and those I have seen had a very good appearance." Lafayette reported that the enemy tried to roll back the Americans three times, but each time the Rhode Islanders threw them back, showing great bravery and inflicting heavy losses on the enemy. One hundred and forty-four men in this action were Negroes. Another report said, "Had they been unfaithful or even given away before the enemy all would have been lost. Three times in succession they were attacked with more desperate valor and fury by well disciplined and veteran troops, and three times did they successfully repel the assault and thus preserved our army from capture." The service record of James Carter is typical of the Negroes enlisted in the regular brigades. He first ~~served~~ was a member of a force on garrison duty for eighteen months at Northampton, Virginia, his home. He then enlisted with the 2nd Virginia Regiment at Portsmouth. The regiment was ordered South to the rescue of South Carolina, then being overrun by the British. The regiment marched through Virginia, North and South Carolina, and took part in the battle of Savannah. The regiment was returned to Virginia (on foot) and took part in the closing battle at Yorktown when General Cornwallis surrendered and the backbone of British military power in America was broken.

Examples of individual cases of bravery are many. Peter Salem was given the credit for having killed Major Pitcairn, in command of the British troops advancing to the assault of Bunker Hill. He was ~~first~~ enlisted from Framingham, Massachusetts, and his battle record shows service at the Concord bridge, Bunker Hill, and Saratoga. Salem Poor of Colonel Frye's regiment performed such feats of valor at the battle of Charlestown that ~~thirteen~~ fourteen American officers signed a recommendation to the Continental Congress, asking for public recognition of his bravery.

In 1779 the Americans had been humiliated by the capture, by the British, of a general officer, Charles Lee. They wished to hold a British officer of like rank in order to get Lee on exchange of prisoners. The unfortunate British victim selected for this reason was Major General Prescott, whose headquarters were at Newport, Rhode Island. Colonel William Barton, of the American forces, picked fifty volunteers to make the attempt to seize Prescott. The British headquarters lay across the sound. ~~Surrounding~~ Colonel Barton had his men ruffle their oars and row across to the point. An axe was taken along to break down the doors of Prescott's house; but a Negro soldier, Prince, a man of tremendous strength, agreed to knock down any doors in

the way - with his fists. The only arms carried were pistols, hidden from public view.

Once safely through the streets of Newport, the sentries before Prescott's headquarters were taken unaware by the Negro who went ahead of the main force. Prince broke down the front door with two blows of his fists. He and Colonel Barton forced one sleepy guard inside the house, where he pointed out Prescott's room. Prescott, ~~was awakened~~ asleep in bed, was awakened to find the Negro Prince and Colonel Barton as his captors. Still in his nightgown, he was taken quietly through the streets of ~~Newport~~ Newport to the American boats and so back to the American lines.

The exploit of Pompey Lamb was equally notable. A slave of Captain Lamb, of the revolutionary army from New York, Pompey was thoroughly familiar with Story Point on the Hudson, seized by the British on June 1, 1779. Pompey visited the fort to sell fruits and vegetables, and was always welcomed by the British garrison. His master, Captain Lamb, was given a detailed report of the British dispositions after each trip. General George Washington and his enemy commander, General Clinton, valued the fort for its strategic worth. The British garrisoned it with the 17th Foot Regiment, ~~and the~~ and the grenadier companies of the 71st, under the command of Lieutenant Colonel Johnson.

A plan was worked out by the Americans by which Pompey told the British he could no longer bring his vegetables in the day, as he had to work in the fields; but that he could come by night. The British believed him, and gave him the counter-sign for the night of July 15th, which was, "The Fort's our own."

The fortress seemed impregnable; defended by strong outworks, a double row of abatis (constructions, usually made of sharp pointed brush and timbers, interlocked), situated on a rocky height, protected on three sides by the Hudson River, and on the fourth by a deep swamp. On the night of July 15th Pompey went ahead of the main body of Americans. He was accompanied by two soldiers dressed as ~~farmers~~ farmers. As they came to the sentries posted at the narrow road leading up the heights, Pompey gave the countersign, and began a conversation with the sentries until his companions could take them unawares. In this way the fort was taken without a shot having been fired; and the reputation of "Mad Anthony" Wayne, the commander of the American forces, was made forever.

Negroes in The first ~~step~~ beginning of the Navy of the United States was, ~~in~~ like the Revolutionary Army, in units operated by the individual states of the new "Federation".

Navy There were eleven separate state "navies" as well as the Continental Navy. Sea life in those days was ~~hard~~ a hard life; and both the United States and Great Britain resorted to devices which would be unthinkable today to get seamen. The common practise of the British was to seize sailors by ~~descending~~ descending upon innocent victims along the waterfront or in city streets and forcing them to join; a practice that later was used by short-handed merchant ships engaged in the China trade and given the name "shanghai-ing". The United States attracted men to its navy by the payment of large bonuses and by giving them "privateering" shares of the value of enemy vessels captured. A daily ration of a half pint of rum was served; one Negro seaman,**

The Virginia navy was typical of the State Navies. There were forty ships, mostly ~~small~~ small coastal vessels, which served to patrol and protect the coast of Virginia. Negroes had been used as seamen and fishermen in the Chesapeake Bay and other waters near Virginia; and ~~at least~~ at least seventy-two Negroes are recorded as having served ~~in~~ in the Virginia Navy during the Revolutionary War. Some of these men received higher than ordinary ratings. James Thomas was a boatswain's mate on the Northampton; James Sorrell was a gunner's mate on the Hero; and two slaves, Starline and Caesar Tarrant, were known as the best pilots in the state Navy. Starline, a ~~native-born~~ native-born African, led the crew of the ship Patriot in an attack on a British sloop in the James River. In the heat of action it was reported that he "hollered for joy" at being in a fight.

Negroes served on practically all of the vessels of the Continental Navy. James Forten, an able seaman from Philadelphia, served on the Royal Louis with twenty other Negroes. He later became a prosperous Philadelphia caterer. In these days when sailing men lived a hard and dangerous life under normal conditions of peace, the hardihood and courage of Negro sailors helped greatly in the foundation of the American Navy of the future.

gallon, a quart and a pint. The record does not explain how he used this generous

** (continue the line with----- having missed his daily ration, at one time was issued one

Effect of War
of the Revolution
on Negroes

The War of the Revolution ended in 1783. By that date slavery was almost at an end in the Northern Atlantic States. The great principles of the Declaration of Independence and of the Constitution of the United States ~~and the fact that the new nation was a free one~~ had power to make men think and act. They had power to make men consider the condition of the Negro slave in a new State which had just arisen as the result of a long fight for Liberty and Freedom.

These great words will bear repeating always. From the Declaration of Independence Americans read -

"We hold these truths to be self-evident:- That all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness."

From the Constitution:

"We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquility, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America....."

Amendments: Article I. "Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for redress of grievances....."

~~Introduction~~

The spirit of the times led State after State in the North to abolish slavery. The Negroes eagerly joined the army and navy, especially when they saw in the service an opportunity to win their freedom. In a Nation dedicated to human freedom, the existence of Negro slavery seemed queer for the first time. Steps began to be taken to abolish the slave trade, and an agreement was reached between the slave and the free states that no more Negroes should be brought into the country after the year 1808. Indeed, very little stood in the way of a quick emancipation of the Negroes, it seemed; for almost everyone of standing in the new Nation agreed that slavery was wrong.

Soon, however, the cotton gin was to be invented - by a Yankee, Eli Whitney; cotton was to become an immensely profitable business; Negro slavery was to become an immensely profitable business; and the fine feelings of human freedom developed by the War of the Revolution were met by the hard and solid fact that Negro slavery was profitable to a great many people. The battle for human freedom faced, in this stubborn fact, ~~an enemy~~ an enemy hard to conquer.

Negroes in the War of 1812 - the Army

The War of 1812 came about as the result of several causes. The United States ~~was~~ young, healthy, and growing; England had not yet made up its mind how far British interests in the North American continent were to be divided between the mother country and the healthy young upstart of the West. There were constant troubles between the ~~powerful~~ all-powerful British naval and commercial fleets and the rapidly growing enterprise of Americans on the seas.

When War came ~~it~~ it was in the main a Naval war. Unsuccessful efforts were made by the United States to invade Canada, and British forces in turn penetrated the Northeastern border of the United States. A British fleet ~~came~~ came up the Chesapeake Bay and, landing near Washington, set fire to the Capitol. The American ~~land~~ land forces were made up of raw militia and showed to great disadvantage against the seasoned British troops.

who were ~~freedommen~~ for the most part veterans of long years of conflict with Napoleon's armies in Europe. ~~freedommen~~

It was not until Napoleon had been crushed - permanently as the British thought, only temporarily as events proved - by the campaigns of 1814, that the British found it possible to send a strong striking force across the Atlantic. There resulted the great and last battle on land of the War - a battle ~~freedommen~~ that was, in fact, quite useless, for peace had been agreed upon between the United States and Great Britain, and the agreement signed ~~two weeks before the Battle was fought.~~ The War ended on December 24, 1814, with the signing of the Treaty of Ghent; but before the news could be brought to America by the ~~slow~~ sailing vessels which were the only means of ~~communicating~~ ~~news~~ carrying the news, the Battle of New Orleans had been fought on January 8, 1815.

The Battle of New Orleans
Negroes served in the American Armies which fought along the Canadian border through the War of 1812. The Battle of New Orleans ~~marked~~ ranks in history as the greatest victory earned by American troops against a foreign foe. It is notable in our story because Negro soldiers played a most important part in the victory; and it is also notable for a less well-known fact; a large part of the splendidly trained and disciplined British Army which met defeat that day was made up of Negroes, also; men recruited from the British West Indies for service in the campaign.

The British had planned their attack upon New Orleans as ~~the~~ part of a three-pronged assault. One Army was to strike down from Canada; landing parties were to land upon the Coast, the American Navy by this time having been driven from the seas; and the third attack was to be made by an army commanded by General Packenham, based on the nearby British West Indies, and invading America through its "back door" at New Orleans, which commanded the great Mississippi Valley. To combat the last moved General Andrew Jackson was ordered to proceed to Mobile and to gather an army to ~~xx~~ defend the Southern coast.

Jackson found himself in great difficulties. The loyalty of Louisiana, which had been a part of the United States only since its purchase by Thomas Jefferson from the French in 1803, was doubtful at best. Jackson had no Army; he had to make one out of raw volunteers from the backwoods. A special call was made to Georgia, ~~Mississippi~~ Kentucky, and Tennessee to furnish volunteers, and these states responded enthusiastically. Tennessee enlisted so many men that it received the name it bears today, the "Volunteer State". However, these men were a thousand miles from New Orleans, they had no arms, they had no military experience, and the only way they could get to New Orleans was by the slow pole boats down the Mississippi, or overland on foot.

In this emergency Andrew Jackson thought of one group of citizens in New Orleans upon whom he might depend for soldiers. On the 21st of December, 1814, he issued a proclamation to the "Free People of Color" of the city. New Orleans was then one of the richest commercial cities in America, second only to New York and Philadelphia in wealth and population; and it had a large number of free colored people who were the descendants of the early French and Spanish settlers, and the Negroes. Many had recently come to New Orleans from Haiti, where they had owned slaves and been in arms against the mighty general of the blacks, Toussaint L'Ouverture.

Jackson's Proclamation is interesting enough to us today to record here in full. It read,

TO THE FREE COLORED INHABITANTS OF LOUISIANA:

Through a mistaken policy, you have heretofore been deprived of a participation in the glorious struggle for national rights in which our country is engaged. This no longer shall exist.

As sons of freedom, you are now called upon to defend our most estimable blessing. As Americans, your country looks with confidence to her adopted children for a valorous support, as a faithful return for the advantages enjoyed under her mild and equitable government. As fathers, husbands and brothers, you are summoned to rally around the standard of the Eagle, to defend all which is dear in existence.

Your country, though calling for your exertions, does not wish you to engage in her cause without ~~and~~ amply remunerating you for the services rendered. Your intelligent minds are not to be led away by false representations.

Your love of honor would cause you to despise the man who would attempt to deceive you. In the sincerity of a soldier and the language of truth I address you.

To every noble-hearted, generous freeman of color volunteering to serve during the present contest with Great Britain, and no longer, there will be paid the same bounty in money and lands, now received by the White soldiers of the United States, viz., one hundred and twenty-four dollars in money, and one hundred and sixty acres of land. The non-commissioned officers, and privates, will also be entitled to the same monthly pay, and daily rations, and clothing, furnished to any American soldier.

On enrolling yourselves in companies the Major General commanding will select officers for your government from your white fellow-citizens. Your non-commissioned officers will be appointed from yourself.

Due regard will be paid to the feeling of freemen and soldiers. You will not, by being associated with white soldiers in the same corps, be exposed to improper comparisons or unjust sarcasm. As a distinct, independent battalion or regiment, pursuing the path of glory, you will, undivided, receive the applause and gratitude of your countrymen.

To assure you of the sincerity of our intentions, and my anxiety to engage your invaluable services to our country, I have communicated my wishes to the Governor of Louisiana, who is fully informed as to the manner of enrollment, and will give you every necessary information on the subject of this address.

(Signed)

Andrew Jackson, Major-General,
Commanding.

Headquarters, 7th Military District,
Mobile, September 21, 1814.

This skilfully worded proclamation met a ready response ~~from~~ in the free colored men. They had been members of the militia under Spanish rule and had covered themselves with distinction. Two battallions of free colored men were formed, of 500 men, under Majors Lacoste and Savary. These men were one-sixth of Jackson's original army of 3 thousand men. Three thousand riflemen from Kentucky and Tennessee arrived, but only on January 7, the day before the battle; and of these only 600 had proper rifles. The rest had to be kept far behind the lines while supplies for them were sent for. In addition to the Louisiana natives, a battallion of experienced ~~negroes~~ ^{Negroes} from Santo Domingo was formed. It numbered 210 men and was formed only a few days before the British landed. It was commanded by Major D'Aquin, and included men who had fought ~~with~~ under the command of the mulatto generals Petion and Rigaud in Haiti against both the British, and later, the blacks under Dessalines.

There was much opposition in Louisiana to Jackson's action in inviting ~~the~~ Negroes ~~and Indians~~ and Indians to join his army. The Assistant District Paymaster in New Orleans objected to paying them. Jackson wrote a letter that is typical of "Old Hickory", and one that quickly put the paymaster in his proper place - as paymaster.

"Be pleased (Jackson wrote him in his own hand) to keep to yourself your Opinions upon the policy of making payments to particular corps. It is enough for you to receive my order for the payment of the troops with the necessary muster rolls without inquiring whether the troops are white, black, or tea. You are not to know whether I have received authority from the War Department to employ any particular description of men, and will, upon the receipt of this, make payment of the Choctaws upon the muster roll of Major Blue."

Jackson was uncertain as to where the British planned to make a landing. Their fleet had been observed near Cat Island, and he knew that his forces stood no chance in an open

battle. It soon became clear that they would be obliged to land from Lake Borgne by barges and lighters, cross over to the bank of the Mississippi across the La Villere plantation, and from there march the fifteen miles that separated them from New Orleans.

The British landed and moved along the Villere canal to make camp at the juncture of the Canal and the Mississippi. It is said that Packenham could then have moved on to New Orleans; but he was ~~was~~ the most methodical of commanders, and it was not informed of Jackson's weakness; Jackson had thrown up ~~the~~ fortifications of whose strength Packenham was uncertain, and he waited for his artillery to be brought from the fleet. On the night of the 23rd of December Jackson had General Coffee attack the British camp along the levee. To aid this ~~the~~ assault, which had only nuisance value for him, Jackson had the gunboat Carolina shell the camp from the river. The British tried to envelop Coffee by advancing their right they met the Negro troops under Daquin and Plauche, and as Bassett says, "deploying in the dark, received a shock from their cool and persistent attack, and, falling back, carried the whole line till it reformed and stood again about three hundred yards back." The fighting was broken off, and Jackson withdrew. Both sides claimed they had won this introductory clash, but it served to give the American side confidence in their ability. It had also given Jackson and his fellow-officers confidence in the Negro troops. The losses were,

	Killed	Wounded	Missing
British	46	167	64
Americans	24	115	74

General Packenham of the British - always methodical - now wasted four days setting up a battery to shell the Carolina which was shelling his camp from the river. The battery did succeed in blowing up the Carolina on its second shot, but Jackson had gained invaluable time in which to erect breastworks and prepare his own batteries. When Packenham moved forward on the 28th of December, he saw with surprise what he thought were very strong works thrown up by the Americans. He decided to wait for some ~~more guns from the fleet~~ heavy guns from the fleet. Many observers believe that had Packenham then attacked, he could easily have taken the American lines by storm. Jackson had chosen a position on Chalmette Plain where his right rested on the Mississippi River and his left ~~was~~ in a dense cypress swamp. His batteries were protected by cotton bales. Along this line from the river to the swamps he had thrown up breastworks. The entire line was only a mile long, and a deep ditch was left in front of the works. Jackson placed 8 batteries along this line on the East side of the river. He feared that the British might try to ~~manoeuvring~~ cross the river below him, and come up the West side of the river, thus taking him in flank; and he had placed 15 cannon across the river so arranged as to be able to enfilade the field before his earthworks.

From January 1st-5th Packenham strengthened his artillery, Jackson his. The Americans ~~was~~ surprised the British with the accuracy of their fire. The British had used sugar higsheads behind which to mount their guns; the cotton bales used by the Americans proved superior. The British guns were silenced by noon of the 5th of January. Packenham withdrew them that evening. As Jackson had foreseen, he then decided to throw troops across the river to the West Bank, and to seize Patterson's batteries which had greatly annoyed the British guns. To get boats from the fleet, Packenham set to work deepening the Villere canal. On the night of the 6th of January 50 boats had arrived, and these Packenham now prepared to cross the river under Thornton to attack Patterson. Jackson continued to strengthen his lines. On January 7th General Lambert joined the British with 1,570 new men; but on the 4th, 2,268 Kentuckians arrived to fight for Jackson. Two-thirds had no guns at all, however, and altogether only 1,100 Kentuckians were available for service.

At last, on the evening of the 7th Packenham thought himself ready to attack. The map shows the disposition of his troops, also that of Jackson's soldiers. The ~~English~~ 7th Regiment of Regulars was placed between the levee and the river on Jackson's

The artillery was manned mainly by three pirate captains from the coastal swamps south of New Orleans - Dominique You, and the Lafitte brothers. Dominique You was known to be a "man of color", and those of the Lafitte's included many "F.P.C.'s" (free people of color) and pure Negroes.

right. Next came Plaque's and Lacoste's battallions of free colored men; and next to them, D'Aquin's Santo Domingo Negroes. The 44th Regiment was next in line, General Carroll's regiment next, and General Coffee on the extreme left. General Adair was in reserve with some of the Kentuckians, the others being under Coffee.

On the British side, General Keane was to lead 1,200 men along the levee road in an attack on Jackson's right, where the 7th Regiment and Plaque's Negroes joined. Half of Keane's force was made up of West Indian Negroes. Toward the British right, General Gibbs was to lead an attack on Jackson's line, with 2,150 men. They were aimed at striking the sector held by Coffee. On the extreme British right, a regiment of West Indian Negroes was assigned to the task of skirting the cypress swamp on that side, and trying to out-flank the Americans.

Thornton was to cross the river on the night of the 7th, and to be in a position to attack Patterson's American batteries on the west bank of the river at 3:00 O'clock in the morning of the 8th, when the entire British line was to move. Thornton had with him 1,400 men, 500 of whom were West Indian Black troops.

Unfortunately for the British, every detail of their plan seemed to go wrong. The Gibbs' column was to carry fascines (bundles of sticks to be thrown before the soldiers into the ditch protecting the American lines, so to fill it up and prepare a crossing) and ladders with which to climb Jackson's earthworks. By some mistake, these had been forgotten. A detail was sent back to get them, and on returning on the double-quick through the British lines turned everything into confusion. Packenham, trying to rally his men in the face of ~~some~~ accurate rifle fire from the ~~Kentuckians~~ Americans, was shot twice, the second time fatally.

The river fell so that Thornton could not get across the river at 7:00 the evening before, as planned, but only at 3:00 O'clock in the morning of the 8th. Thornton was not able to attack until 6:00, three hours after Packenham had advanced the British troops on the East bank of the river. Keane, on the British right, was expected only to create a diversion. He did so. Then noticing the confusion of Gibbs' column, he obliqued across the field to place his troops at the ~~xxx~~ shattered spearhead of Gibbs' attack. This was a magnificent bit of parade ground warfare; the British were dressed in bright red coats and their equipment glittered in the morning sun. However, by this manouever they exposed their flank to the deadly fire of the three battallions of free colored men and West Indian blacks, as well as to the fire of the Kentucky riflemen under Coffee. With an amazing courage, the white Englishmen and the black West Indians of Keane's command marched on, closing ranks with superb courage as the men fell in windrows; but when the column reached the ditch in front of Coffee's men, there were too few left to penetrate.

By 8:30 A.M., two and a half hours after the British had first brought themselves in range of the American riflemen, rifle fire had ceased. The artillery broke off at 2:00 P.M. On the West bank Thornton's ~~xxx~~ British black and whites had been completely successful; if Packenham had been more successful, the British would have won the battle. General Jackson is said to have cursed vigorously when the Kentuckians supporting Patterson's batteries withdrew; but military observers say that it was his own fault; he had spread the line on the West bank too thin for the number of men placed there. After destroying the batteries, Thornton was obliged to withdraw by the British failure on the East bank of the river.

So ended the Battle of New Orleans. The British had lost, from December 23rd to February 5th, when they retired to their fleet and sailed away to the West Indies, a total of 2,492 men. The total American loss had been 333 men. In the Battle of New Orleans itself, in the two and a half hours between 6:00 A.M. when the battle began, and 8:30 A.M. when it ended, the British had lost 700 killed, 1200 wounded, and 500 prisoners. The American loss in the same time had been 8 killed and 18 wounded. Packenham had 12,000 men in the attacking force, with reserves, the Americans less than 4,000 in line and with arms on both banks. The British soldiers fought with conspicuous bravery; but the terrible artillery fire of Dominique You, the "colored" pirate; the steadiness of the free men of color and the West Indian Negroes, as well as the accurate rifle fire of the Kentuckians of whom most of the history has written; these with the determination of the American commander, "Old Hickory", gave the United States a

great victory to end a War full of reverses and humiliating set-backs. The story of the Battle of New Orleans can best be summarized by the final Address to the colored soldiers of the Battle of New Orleans:

JACKSON'S

"TO THE MEN OF COLOR - SOLDIERS!

From the shores of Mobile I collected you to arms,-- I invited you to share in the perils and to divide the glory of your white countrymen. I expected much from you; for I was not uninformed of those qualities which must render you so formidable to an invading foe. I knew that you could endure hunger and thirst, and all the hardships of war. I knew that you loved the land of your nativity, and that, like ourselves, you had to defend all that is most dear to man. But you surpassed my hopes. I have found in you, united to these qualities, that noble enthusiasm which impels to great deeds.

"SOLDIERS! The President of the United States shall be informed of your conduct on the present occasion; and the voice of the Representatives of the American nation shall applaud your valor, as your General now praises your ardor. The enemy is near. His sails cover the lakes. But the brave are united; and, if he finds us contending among ourselves, it will be for the prize of valor, and fame its noblest reward."

Negroes in
the Navy -
War of 1812

It was said above that the War of 1812 was principally a naval war. The American Navy was young and small; the British navy the greatest in the world. While Americans performed many feats of bravery on the high seas, they had neither the men nor the ships to successfully oppose the British.

The result was that by 1814 most of the ships of the fledgling American Navy had been sunk or driven to port, and the action of the Navy was confined to privateering raids and to the actions commanded by Commodores Perry and McDonough on the Great Lakes.

In all of these actions Negroes took a prominent part. Indeed, one of the chief causes of the War of 1812 lay in the famous case of the Leopard, British frigate, firing into the American frigate Chesapeake, off the Virginia Coast. The British demanded and enforced the right to stop and search American vessels for men alleged to have deserted from the British fleet. ~~The three disputed men who were members of the crew of the Chesapeake were Negroes.~~

After being hailed and fired upon by the Britisher, Commodore Barron of the Chesapeake found his ship badly damaged, and struck his colors. A boarding party from the Leopard took off four men, claiming that they were British subjects and deserters. Three of these men were Negroes.

The white man, it was proved, was a British subject; but Daniel Martin, John Stachen, and William Ware proved that though they had served on the British ship Melampus, they were American born and had enlisted at Norfolk. While denying the right of the British to search and seize, the United States made no claim for the white man, but did demand that the three Negroes, American citizens, be returned. The British did so in 1811; but in returning them ~~the~~ Great Britain refused to give up the right of search.

When the war broke out in 1814, Negroes formed ~~from one-sixth to one-fourth~~ ^{also} of all of the seamen in the American Navy. This was true of the Jawa and the Guerriere, two famous ships of the period. These men performed well and creditably in the engagements of the War.

The series of battles on the Great Lakes provided an interesting example of the use of Negro sailors. Commodore Perry was sent to Lake Erie to construct a fleet which was to be used in protecting the American shores from landings and raids from Canada. ~~James~~ McDonough was given a like responsibility on Lake Champlain. The British, from ports on the Canadian shore, already had fleets in these waters consisting of converted ~~ships~~ vessels which had before been used in Lake trade. The Americans had to ~~begin with~~ first build a fleet, and then to man it.

Perry was sent so many Negro seamen by the recruiting officers that he wrote to complain of the number of "blacks" who were sent to him. ~~Commodore~~ Chauncey replied, stating that "he had never been accustomed to judging the ~~travels~~ of men by the cut of their jib or the color of their skin," and he assured Perry that the men would do him credit.

Said Chauncey,

"A part of them are not surpassed by any seamen in the fleet (many of the sailors were taken from American ships tied up in blockaded New England ports), and I have yet to learn that the color of the skin can of affect a man's qualifications or usefulness. I have nearly fifty blacks on board this ship and many of them are among my best men. They are attentive and obedient, and, so far as I can judge, many of them are excellent seamen."

It must be said that Perry never felt the same about Negro ~~men~~ seamen again, after they had helped him win the classic victory. Perry's own ship was almost blasted out of the water, and he was obliged to transfer to another ship in his command. The historic painting of the affair shows two Negroes in the small boat with him as the change was made. He reported the result of his crushing defeat of the British under Barclay with the words, "We have met the enemy, and they are ours; two ships, two brigs, one schooner, and one sloop." Altogether it is estimated that one-fourth of his men were Negroes.

Referring to an incident that occurred on the armed schooner Governor Thompkins, commanded by Nathaniel Shaler, Perry ~~wrote~~ in a letter to Niles Register described an action between his vessel and a large British frigate. He mentioned particularly two Negro seamen.

"The name of one of my poor fellows," he said, "was Johnson, a black man. A 24 pound shot struck him on the hip and carried away part of his body. In this state the poor, brave fellow lay on the deck, and several times exclaimed to his shipmates, 'Fight away, my boys; no haul a color down!' The other was a black man, too, by the name of John Davis, and was struck in the same way. He fell near me and several times requested to be thrown overboard, saying that he was only in the way of others. When America has such tars, she has little to fear from tyrants on the ocean."

There were numerous Negroes also engaged in the Battle of Lake Champlain, under the command of Lieutenant (later Commodore) McDonough. The action of this fleet prevented the British from invading upper New York, and repeating in 1814 the penetration made in 1877 by Burgoyne, following the same road.

The American Navy did yeoman service, though outnumbered, ~~and~~ outwitted, and outgunned in the War of 1812. After that War the attention of American shipbuilders was turned to the production of the famous fast sailing vessels, the "Clipper Ships". In this service the merchant shipping of the United States laid the foundation of American World Trade, and the foundation of this country as one of the world's Great Powers. The fast "Clippers" that cleared from Marblehead and Gloucester, to outsail British and Dutch mariners for the rich "China Trade", included many Negroes. Indeed, the early American merchant marine was largely composed of American officers and seamen of all races and countries.

There is no greater story of the sea than that told by Herman Melville in the ~~in~~ story of Captain Ahab and his pursuit of the Great White Whale, Moby Dick. The third harpooner on the Pequod of Melville's story "was Daggoo, a gigantic, coal-black, negro-savage, with a lion-like tread - an Ahasuerus to behold. Suspended from his ears were two golden hoops, so large that the sailors called them ring-bolts, and would talk of securing the top-sail halyards to them. In his youth Daggoo had voluntarily shipped on board of a whaler, lying in a lonely bay on his native coast. And never having been anywhere in the world but in Africa, Nantucket, and the pagan harbors most frequented by whalers; and having now led for many years the bold life of the fishery in the ships of owners uncommonly heedful of what manner of men they shipped; Daggoo retained all his barbaric virtues, and erect as a giraffe, moved about the decks in all the pomp of six feet wife in his socks. There was a corporeal humility in looking up at him; and a white man standing before him seemed a white flag come to beg truce of a fortress."

CHAPTER XIV.

THE NEGRO IN THE UNITED STATES - MILITARY HISTORY: THE CIVIL WAR AND THE SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR

THE NEGRO IN THE CIVIL WAR: Causes - Negroes in the Military service of the Confederacy
- Negroes in the service of the Federal armies - the Negro at the explosion of the
Petersburg Mine, with detail showing the Petersburg siege, 1864 - other engagements -
THE NEGRO IN THE NAVY: John Lawson and the Battle of Mobile Bay - NEGRO REGULAR SOLDIERS
IN THE INDIAN WARS - NEGRO SOLDIERS IN THE SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR: San Juan and El Caney
- Phillipine Campaigns

THE NEGRO IN THE UNITED STATES - MILITARY HISTORY: THE
CIVIL WAR AND THE SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR

THE NEGRO IN THE CIVIL WAR: Causes - Negroes in the Military service of the Confederacy - Negroes in the service of the Federal armies - the Negro at the explosion of the Petersburg Mine, with detail showing the Petersburg siege, 1864 - other engagements - THE NEGRO IN THE NAVY: Robert Smalls and the Planter - John Lawson and the Battle of Mobile Bay - NEGRO REGULAR SOLDIERS IN THE INDIAN WARS - NEGRO SOLDIERS IN THE SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR: San Juan and El Caney - Philippine Campaigns

The Civil War was a long and bloody conflict which began officially on April 12, 1861, and ended four years later on April 9, 1865, with ~~Southwestern~~ Lee's surrender to Grant at Appomattox, Virginia.

Many men had seen the war in the making for a generation; but no one was able to stop what everyone feared. The United States was having growing pains. From the North East settlers had pushed across the mountains to open the great Northwest Territory; and the discovery of Gold in California in 1849, following fast upon the defeat of Mexico in 1848, had opened up a whole continent to ~~the~~ settlement by Americans. The South had expanded into the Southwest, moving from the Atlantic seaboard states of Virginia, the Carolinas, and Georgia into Kentucky, Tennessee, Alabama; Missouri, Arkansas, Louisiana; and finally into the great Empire of the Southwest, Texas.

This young giant who now stretched from the Atlantic to the Pacific was torn inside by great problems. Cotton had become the richest source of the American export trade. Cotton, however, to continue to prosper, depended on two factors: great areas of land, and new land where cotton could be extended; and Negro slaves. Cotton was a bad crop for the land; and the system either had to stop, or continue to grow. The number of slaves was always growing by natural increase, and new lands had to be taken up and cultivated if the price was not to ~~go~~ fall - in short, if the system was not to come to a stop.

On the other hand the North was becoming more and more a combination of great factory towns which had to be fed by the farms of the Middle West. The North, in factory and field, depended on free labor. People in the North saw the issue from the opposite side; ~~and~~ they believed that either the free labor system had to grow, or come to an end. From this base grew other problems. The North was rapidly growing in population to have more people than lived in the South. If the North continued to grow into the great Western territories, Southerners feared that the new states to be brought into the Union would take the side of the North, and outvote the South on great national issues; perhaps even on slavery. The North saw likewise; and so Northern ~~men~~ politicians worked to keep slavery out of the new territories on the other side of the Mississippi, while Southern politicians worked to make slavery a legal system in the new territories West of the river.

Another issue which in some ways was part of the slavery issue was that of States Rights. In general the ~~Unionist~~ politicians representing the North began to believe in the virtue of a strong central Federal Government; while in the South the idea that the State had rights which the Federal Government neither could, nor should, take away, was held strongly by many. As far back as 1832 "Old Hickory" - Andrew Jackson - had upheld the Federal Government against the right of a State - South Carolina - to withdraw from the Union, although he himself was a Southerner. By 1860 many people in the South ~~still~~ believed that the Federal Government was an agreement between the States, made of their own free will; and that any State could, if it wished, cancel that agreement and withdraw from the Union to set up its own form of independent government.

In the election of 1860 Abraham Lincoln was chosen as President in a field with four strong candidates. The vote was strictly sectional. Lincoln received less than half of all votes cast, but the majority of the electoral votes. Lincoln's platform clearly set forth his belief in the preservation of the Union; he denied the right of a State to secede; and on the slavery issue he promised not to interfere with the South if elected, but insisted that slavery should not be introduced into the Northern territories. He also stood for the right of the Federal Government to control the slavery problem

In 1859 came John Brown's Raid. John Brown was an old farmer who had lived in Kansas at a time when the Anti-Slavery conflict was at its bitterest. Kansas became a battleground between those who wished to see Slavery established in the territories, and those who wished Slavery confined to the Southern States. People from the North sent money, guns, ammunition, to men like John Brown in Kansas; people from the South sent help in supplies and men from the South to their friends in Kansas who wished the territory to vote for slavery.

Old John Brown had been in the thick of the guerrilla fighting that resulted from the two factions. He had seen two sons killed on this wild border, and was himself accused of being murderous and bloodthirsty. Both sides engaged in pitiless vengeance on the other.

In 1858 old John Brown went to Pennsylvania, where he gathered around him a small company of Negroes and white men, including two of the last sons remaining to him. He got together a store of rifles and ammunition. His plan was to hide in the mountains near Harpers Ferry, Virginia, until the time was ripe; and then to seize the United States Government Arsenal there, give the arms to the slaves nearby whom he expected to flock to him, and so start a great slave rebellion in the South.

Many of his friends told him that his proposed raid was the act of a madman. Frederick Douglass, the great Negro orator and anti-slavery speaker, came to John Brown and tried to persuade him not to carry out his plans. Douglass argued for law and order; he told Brown that the result would be suicide for Brown and hurt the cause of the Negro. Brown ~~was not~~ paid him no attention; his mind was made up, and he was a man of iron.

Brown made his raid. By one of those peculiar accidents that seem to mock such enterprises, the first person killed was one of the Negroes whom Brown had come to free - an innocent bystander shot by mistake. The Arsenal was taken over quickly by Brown, and he found an ample supply of arms; but the Negroes did not come to him as he had hoped. He had committed a clear ~~act~~ of treason. The Virginia militia and Federal soldiers under Colonel - later the famous General - Robert E. Lee were called out. After a strong resistance during which Brown's small force was largely killed, and Brown himself severely wounded, he surrendered. He was tried for murder and after ~~months~~ trial was sentenced and hung.

Old John Brown had failed; but what he had done echoed over all the Nation, North and South. In the North many people called him a hero. In the South many people called him a murderous madman. Even more, what Brown had done convinced many Southern people that the North would stop at nothing - not even at inciting the slaves to rebel and kill their masters; and that the only safety for the South was to form a government independent of the North and able to defend itself against such ~~new~~ happenings.

The grand plan of strategy on the part of the Union Armies, from the very beginning, was (1) to cut off the Confederate States from Europe, by blockade to prevent the bringing in of military supplies; (2) to cut the Confederate states in two so that the fighting armies in the East could not be supplied by the food growing areas of the Southwest; and (3) to crush the armies of the Confederacy after they had thus been reduced by strangulation.

The Union strategy and force of superior arms finally won out. ~~Grant~~ Grant came down the Mississippi ~~in~~ Valley to cut the Confederacy in two at Vicksburg, ~~also~~ surrendered on July 4, 1863. At the same time Banks and Butler had seized New Orleans and cut off the lower Valley the year before. In 1864 Sherman cut the Confederacy into three parts by his March through Georgia from Atlanta to Savannah. This sealed the doom of the Confederacy; the blockade had cut off foreign aid, the English sympathizers of the Confederacy were ~~therefore~~ powerless, and General Lee's brilliant defensive tactics ~~made~~ in Virginia availed nothing in the end with a crushed and divided Nation at his back.

In a war of this length, and bitterness, the meaning of "total war" became known to all, especially in the South. With a white population much smaller than that of the North, the South had from the first to consider how its three and one half million Negroes could be used to

Next Saturday evening, the colored patriots of this city will give, at No. 136 Poydras Street, a Grand Fancy Ball, for the benefit of the Free Markets established for the families of those who have gone to the battlefield. It will be one of the most curious features of this revolution; and we hope to see this reunion well attended. While our volunteers are fighting for their country, it is quite refreshing to see the colored people dancing for the benefit of the sisters, mothers, daughters and wives left at home by our heroes. What would Lincoln say to this?"

In general, however, it must be said that the Negroes were not too enthusiastic about helping the Confederate cause. Especially was this true after Lincoln, by his

Emancipation Proclamation, had turned the War into one both to preserve the Union, and to free the slaves. At the same time there was strong feeling in the South that it would be a great mistake to permit Negroes to fight for the Confederacy. The old rule of warfare almost everywhere had been that a man, though a slave, who fought for his country should no longer be kept a slave; and there was no desire to let the War do what the Confederacy was fighting against. It was also thought that Negroes would not make good soldiers; and there were also few masters who wanted to risk a valuable slave in warfare.

As the need for manpower in the South grew, and the use of Negro soldiers by the North showed that the Negro did make a good soldier, sentiment began to change. Now many men were bold enough to say that the only way the South could match the manpower of the North was by using Negro soldiers. In 1864 General Cleburne, in January, presented a paper to the Army of Tennessee recommending that slaves be enlisted. The paper was suppressed by President Jefferson Davis of the Confederacy, but the idea made a sensation, and the agitation for the suggestion grew. In January, 1865, General Robert E. Lee was prevailed upon to break his rule of not speaking on political issues to issue a statement advocating the use of Negro soldiers in his armies. On March 15, 1865 - one month before the Confederate surrender at Appomattox - Jefferson Davis signed a bill authorizing the Confederate Government to enlist 200,000 Negroes. Enlistment began immediately, and thousands of Negroes actually joined up. The recruiting offices in Richmond were crowded. But the move came too late, and none of these Negroes enlisted in March were formed into combat troops before the surrender by Lee.

Nevertheless Negroes did serve the Confederate Armies directly. They were widely used in place of white troops in the services of supply. Nathan Forrest, the famous cavalry general who is supposed to have uttered that classic rule for winning battles, "to get there fustest with the mostest men," used his own plantation slaves as the teamsters for his forces. Negroes were used as the equivalent of engineer detachments in the construction of fortifications at Richmond, Mobile, Charleston, and elsewhere. The work was so dangerous and the casualties so high that many masters began to make trouble for the officers ~~minuting~~ drafting their slaves for these exposed duties. Negroes were also widely used in ordinance works. At the cannon factory in Selma, 310 of 400 workmen were Negroes.

Negroes also served widely in the Confederate Armies as personal servants to officers and even to men fighting at the front. The Third Alabama Regiment left Alabama with 1000 men and 400 Negro servants. In one Virginia regiment it was said that whenever fatigue details were assigned, the soldiers "uncomplainingly took upon themselves the duty of sitting on the fence and superintending the work of their Negroes." These Negroes at times even became combatants; the Federals claimed that the Confederates used Negroes as soldiers before they did, for at Antietam several were reported captured and exchanged. The Confederates said these were body-servants, not soldiers. Yet these men performed many acts of bravery in behalf of their masters whom they did accompany into battle. In after years no Confederate Reunion was complete without the presence of a number of these ex-servants, dressed in the Confederate butternut-grey, and swapping stories with the white veterans of the good old days. The historian Wiley says that "one of the last acts of the Mississippi 'Rebel' legislature was the authorization of the emancipation of Lloyd, a Negro servant who risked his life to recover the body of his fallen master..... for more than twenty years Confederate body servants of Mississippi have received Confederate pensions from the State."

The hardships of War soon reduced the number of servants which a hard fighting, hard marching regiment could take along with it. The practise continued to the last among officers; and the Negroes served as forage details when food had become a scarce article in the Confederacy. It is certain that Lincoln's Emancipation Proclamation was one of the most powerful military weapons hurled at the Confederacy by the Federal Forces; and indeed Lincoln said the Proclamation was justified under the Constitution on account of "Military Necessity".

Negroes in the
Military Service
of the North

The policy of the Federal Government at the beginning of the Civil War was opposed to the use of Negro soldiers. The North was not ready to say that it was fighting to free the slaves; policy required the stand that the fight was for the preservation of the Union, and that slavery was incidental. This ostrich policy, however, could not stand up under the conditions found by commanders in the field. Everywhere in the South Union generals found their camps thronged with Negroes; some had been made homeless by the ebb and flow of battle, others came seeking freedom. The men who came were as valuable to the Union generals in many military activities as they were to the Confederates. Furthermore, it was soon realized how great a weapon the freedom of the Negroes was in disorganizing the home front of the Confederacy. A slave with the Federals was a military unit lost to the Confederates.

On August 25, 1862, General Saxton was authorized to enlist not more than 50,000 Negro laborers and 5,000 Negro soldiers in the Department of the Gulf. In May of 1863 the War Department authorized General Thomas to go to the Mississippi Valley to raise as many Negro troops as he could. Lincoln, always going slowly, did not give his full approval to the enlistment of Negro troops until it had actually been made an accomplished fact.

The first regularly enrolled regiment of Negro troops was one of which the core was made up of the same "Native Guards" who had ~~served~~ paraded with the Confederates through the streets of New Orleans in 1861. Permitted to elect their own officers of color, these men were enrolled under the name of the First Regiment of Louisiana Native Guards, later the First Regiment Infantry Corps d'Afrique, and finally First Regiment Louisiana Heavy Artillery. By the end of 1862 there were four Negro regiments in the Federal service. As soon as the Emancipation Proclamation took effect, Lincoln at last gave official recognition to the enlistment of Negroes. The famous 54th and 55th Massachusetts Negro regiments were then organized, followed by many more. At the end of the war it was recorded that 178,975 Negroes had served in the Union Armies, while probably three times as many had been engaged in military endeavors of ~~many~~ different kinds.

The Louisiana Native Guards were perhaps the most interesting of all Negro regiments. It was made up entirely of free Negroes - the "free men of color" - ~~many~~ many of whom were descendants of the men who had fought at New Orleans under "Old Hickory" Andrew Jackson in 1815. They regarded themselves as distinctly a cut above the "new issue", as the newly freed Negroes were called. All of the line officers of this regiment were colored; and not one, it was said, was worth less than \$25,000 in property or other resources. Among their number was Captain Cailloux, like many of the other men a French-speaking black creole; indeed, a historian states that Captain Cailloux was so black that he was fond of bragging about it. Captain Cailloux, with many of his fellow-officers and men, was killed in the assault upon Confederate earthworks at Port Hudson. In this same battle the color sergeant, Anselmo Planciancois, was struck by five bullets; he fell on his back and hugged the flag to him to keep it from being lost or from touching the ground. As he died two corporals in the guard had a heated quarrel over who should carry the colors; the argument was settled by a rifle shot, killing one. The accounts of Port Hudson pointed ~~it~~ out how futile it had been to make a frontal assault on a position of this strength; but it proved also that Negroes - if new proof was needed - could stand up under the deadliest fire with the utmost bravery. The First Louisiana lost 60 percent of their effectives in two hours at Port Hudson.

The ~~indefatigable~~ battle of Port Wagner provided another example of the stability of Negro troops under fire. This Fort was a strong position near Charleston; the effort to take it was illadvised, considering its strength and the fact that to approach it the troops were obliged to make a beach landing and march twenty-four hours without food or water through the hot beach sands. The 54th Negro Massachusetts Regiment was ordered to lead the attack. It was commanded by Robert Gould Shaw. When the Negro regiments were organized, there was at first some difficulty in finding officers because social ostracism was feared. Shaw, a man of the most select social circles, had been an officer

in the socially acceptable 7th New York. He volunteered to serve with the 54th. Colonel Shaw was killed in the effort to storm Fort Wagner, the total casualties of the Regiment in this one engagement being 45 per cent. General Taliaferro, the Confederate ~~commanding~~ commanding officer at Fort Wagner, in his ~~own~~ account of the engagement pointed out both the folly that led the Federal officers to try to make a frontal assault - at night - on a strong position, without artillery support, and the bravery of the Negroes. He said, "It was terrible, but with unsurpassed gallantry the Federal soldiers breasted the storm and rushed gallantly onward to the glacis. The Confederates, with the tenacity of bull dogs, and ~~notwithstanding~~ as fierce a courage, poured from the ramparts and embrasures sheets of flame, yet the Federals came on. They fell by hundreds, but they pushed on, reeling under the fearful blasts that almost blew them to pieces, up to the Confederate bayonets. The 54th Massachusetts had its colonel killed on the parapet and the regiment almost annihilated."

It was in this engagement that Sergeant W. H. Carney achieved fame. The color bearer, he had a place in the front ranks next to Colonel Shaw. The men had to cross a ditch, and climb two walls before they found themselves on the parapet of the Fort. Carney was wounded in the thigh, but climbed the parapet with Colonel Shaw. The Colonel was killed, and Carney wounded again, this time by a ball that shattered his right arm. He planted the flag on the parapet and lay down upon the outer slope for shelter. He remained there a half-hour until another brigade came to the charge; and he retreated with them, crawling on one knee, and still holding up the flag. In the field hospital he was cheered by the men; and in reply repeated these immortal words, "Boys, the old flag never touched the ground!"

Among other engagements in which numbers of Negro soldiers participated with credit were Milliken's Bend, Clustee, Pittsburg Landing, Nashville, New Market, and the siege of Petersburg. This last named engagement was of such a nature as to deserve special mention here.

The Peters- In 1864 Grant had begun that relentless pressure on Lee's armies around burg Mine Richmond which his riches in manpower would permit, but which he knew Lee could not long endure. He had gradually shifted his main forces from the line east and Northeast of Richmond to the South and Southeast; and he lay before Petersburg in June with the conviction that this city held the key to the Confederate defense system. Grant's plan was to have a part of his army cross over the James River at Deep Bottom, thus drawing the enemy across to defend Richmond from this approach. If he surprised Lee, he would move on to Richmond; if not, he would quickly bring his army back across the James before Petersburg and attack through a breach to be made in the enemy's line by an immense mine.

The scheme failed, as all of Grant's schemes - save the pitiless grinding down of Lee's armies by steady pressure - failed as he faced Lee. The great mine attack at Petersburg was a miserable failure; and Lee sent 13,000 men to follow Grant's diversion force, which was withdrawn on July 29th. The story of the Petersburg mines however, makes a thrilling, however sad, chapter in the history of the Civil War and of Negro troops.

The mine consisted of a long gallery ~~222~~ 500 feet in length with two cross arms at the firing end, each 38 feet long. It was surveyed to explode under the Confederate position known as Elliott's Salient. The idea was born in a regiment of Pennsylvania miners who held the Federal line at this point. The two series of trenches and other works were in some places less than fifty yards apart. The mine was so planned to be exploded beyond the second Confederate line. Once a breach had been made, with the added element of surprise, it was thought that an assault force could easily continue into the breach and, fanning out beyond, completely surprise the enemy.

The mine was charged with 8000 pounds of ~~gunpowder~~ gunpowder in 320 kegs. The fuses not being long enough, they were spliced; a repair that later cost a delay of an hour in the explosion of the mine, and perhaps the failure of the whole effort.

Negro troops of the 4th Division, including nearly 4,300 men, were first assigned to lead the attack. The signal was to be the explosion, after which four divisions of nearly 12,000 men were to advance in waves. For some reason Grant countermanded Burnside's orders respecting the order of the assault. In the changed order, Ledlie's Division was to go first in the center. Wilcox was to advance on the left, with Potter's Division on the right. The Negroes were placed behind Ledlie's Division and ordered to advance in support.

It had been planned to explode the mine at 3:30 in the morning, an hour at which the Federals could have advanced to the lip of the crater protected by darkness. The fuse went out at the place where it had been spliced. It had to be relit, and the mine finally exploded at 4:45 A.M., when it was broad daylight, and the element of surprise considerably diminished. Ledlie's Division went on, but slowly; and the Confederates recovered more quickly than had been anticipated. Ledlie's men were thrown into ~~the~~ confusion, some taking refuge in the rifle pits left by the Confederates, and others crowding into the huge crater left by the explosion. Into this disorder Ferrero's Division (the Negro troops) was ordered to advance. Their ranks were disarranged by the men they found already crowded in the crater; but some went on to the left and took 200 prisoners. The remainder, with Ledlie's men who had gone before, were caught hopelessly in the crater. The enemy, now completely recovered from their momentary daze, turned the crater into a hell, concentrating on it rifle and cannon fire from three sides. The order to retreat was not given until noon; and by this time the Crater had become the costliest military experiment of the Civil War. The Negro casualties were 1,327 out of 4,300 men, or 30 percent. Total Federal casualties were 472 killed, 1,644 wounded, and 1,356 missing, a total of 3,472.

While the experiment failed, the stakes were high, and had it succeeded it is difficult to see how Petersburg could have stood. Ten thousand men introduced behind the Confederate lines would doubtless have disorganized completely the Confederate resistance; and Lee's Southern bastion would have been lost him, leaving Richmond open. At the least it may be said that the failure of the assault was not due to the Negro troops who left 209 men killed, and 697 wounded in the Crater, and with 421 prisoners in Confederate hands.

The Negro in the Navy in the Civil War The tradition of Negroes serving in the Navy of the United States was continued during the Civil War. The immense effort to establish an effective blockade of the long Confederate coast line, stretching from the Virginia capes to the Rio Grande, required the greatest expansion of the United States Navy in history. ~~The~~ The Confederacy needed goods and munitions of all sorts badly, and the cotton of the South was the weapon it had depended on to win the war. It was thought that English cotton manufacturers and textile workers would not tolerate a blockade that cut the manufacturer off from his raw material; and that the ~~immense~~ cotton mill workers in England would join with the mill owners in a demand for cotton that would soon bring England to the side of the South against the North.

Unfortunately for the ^a cause of the Confederacy, Northern lecturers were able to appeal to the humanitarian sentiments of the English textile mill workers; and the expected surge of sentiment in favor of the South never materialized. The sympathies of the English workers remained with the cause of emancipating the slaves. Since the South was a raw materials, and not a manufacturing country, it was impossible for it to win without assistance ~~from~~ in the form of implements of war from outside her border. The Union blockade and the Navy thus became key factors in the strangulation of the Confederacy.

The Navy had ~~immense~~ three chief aims. One was to blockade the numerous ports and inlets in the South that provided harbor for blockade runners. Another was to provide protection and to pave the way for Federal landings on Southern beach heads. A third was the protection of the Union commercial shipping from ~~the~~ raids by fast and well armed Confederate privateers.

The vast scope of the inland waterways provided a fourth aim that increased in importance as the war progressed. This was to serve as an active aid in reducing the strong points of the Confederacy, with the gunboats of the Navy working closely with the land forces of the Army.

The Civil War was also noteworthy because it was one of the first great opportunities to measure the advantages of steam against sail; and by producing the first "iron-clad" ships of war, sounded the death knell of the wooden ship. Of all of the engagements which represented this trend, the battle of Mobile Bay on August 5, 1864, well represents these mixed elements.

It is also notable to our story in that the conduct of John H. Lawson, Negro, was recognized and rewarded by the award to him of the Congressional Medal of Honor.

The official citation reads,

"John H. Lawson; Landsman; on board of the U. S. S. Hartford, in the engagement in Mobile Bay, August 5, 1864. Was one of the six men stationed at the shell-heap on the berth deck. A shell killed or wounded the whole number. Lawson was wounded in the leg and thrown with great violence against the side of the ship; but as soon as he recovered himself, although begged to go below, he refused and went back to the shell-heap, where he remained during the action." (General Orders 45, December 31, 1864; also report of Captain Percival Drayton, Flag Ship Hartford, Mobile Bay, August 9, 1864.)

rendered

The Battle of Mobile Bay has made famous the statement said to have been made during the heat of battle by Rear Admiral David G. Farragut, commanding officer of a Union force which ran the defenses in Mobile Bay to a safe anchorage inside -

"Damn the torpedoes: Full Speed Ahead!"

One of Farragut's captains had signalled him that he was dropping out of the set line of sail because he had sighted torpedoes (mines) ahead. Farragut was cooperating with a Federal Army approaching Mobile by land. The entrance to Mobile Bay was defended by two forts, ~~and~~ by a barricade of mines laid across the channel, and by a number of small Confederate warships. Of these the Ram Tennessee was a dangerous enemy, iron clad as compared to Farragut's wooden ships, and but recently completed at Selma and brought down the Alabama River to help protect Mobile.

By veering to the right Farragut planned to escape the fire of the fort on the left. This course, however, would bring him in range of the guns of Fort Morgan. The Union fleet included four ironclads, the Tecumseh, ~~the~~ Manhattan, Winnebago, and the Chickasaw. Farragut planned to place his iron-clads between his principal fleet and Fort Morgan. This was the easier because they were light draft and could leave the channel where his larger ships had to go. He lashed the ships together in ~~pairs~~ twos, ~~so that if one were hit, the other could pull her through.~~ This was a wise provision; the Oneida was hit in her boilers, but the Galena pulled her through. Farragut also lashed himself in the rigging, the better to observe and direct the passage of the ships. This was a highly exposed position, but he emerged unharmed.

According to his official report, his fleet got under way at 5:40 A. M. The main ship channel was reached by 6:47. The monitors were already inside the bar. The Tecumseh fired at 6:47; at 7:06 Fort Morgan fired in return. Farragut had given orders to steam ahead, although it was known that the channel was mined. Suddenly the Brooklyn, which with the Octorara was leading the line, came to a stop. Farragut asked why, and was told that torpedoes had been sighted. It was then that Farragut gave his famous answer. He swung the Hartford and ~~the~~ her companion, the Metacombet, around the Brooklyn and the Octorara, and took the lead himself. Just at this time the Tecumseh struck a mine and sank.

One explanation has been mentioned by Admiral Mahan in his History of the Mobile Battle as an explanation as to why more of the Union ships were not sunk by the

mines. This is that the mines then used were easily corroded by exposure, and while the Union ship must have struck them, their detonators did not explode. On the night before Farragut had sent a small boat through the channel and marked a free way with buoys. Mahan states also that a floating mine released the night before might have sunk the Tecumseh.

~~When~~ The fleet suffered comparatively small losses in passing Fort Morgan; the concentrated fire of the ships ~~guns~~ made reply difficult. It is interesting here to note that at least some of the batteries of Fort Morgan were served by a battalion of free colored men who had been enlisted as heavy artillery by the Confederates as early as 1861. Unlike their New Orleans counterparts who joined the Union Army when the city was occupied in 1862, the Mobile "Creoles" seem to have ~~remained in the Confederacy until the fall of 1862~~ seen action against the Federals and to have done well. There is an interesting correspondence about this unit to be found in the Official Reports of the War of the Rebellion. Alabama, ~~in~~ long before the use of men of Negro blood had been authorized, had passed a bill to legalize the enlistment of free colored men; the bill must have been passed just for the benefit of the Mobile and Baldwin county "Creoles". When the matter was brought to the attention of ~~Secretary of War for the Confederacy~~, ^{the} Secretary of War for the Confederacy, it was pointed out to him ~~that while the Mobile county Creoles might have some Negro blood, they were good citizens, had considerable property, and "did not stand on the footing of Negroes," at least in Mobile.~~ General Maury replied, by Major-General Maury that "They have Negro blood in the degree which disqualifies other persons of Negro race from the rights of citizens, but they do not stand here on the footing of Negroes." Another sponsor for their use as soldiers of the Confederacy referred to them as "property-holders, owning slaves, and a peaceable, orderly class, and capable of doing good service." James A. Seddon, Secretary of War for the Confederacy, finally approved the enlistment of the Mobile Creoles, with the qualification that "Our position ~~in~~ with the North and before the world will not allow the employment ~~of~~ as armed soldiers of Negroes. If these creoles can be naturally and properly discriminated from Negroes, the authority may be considered as conferred."

Once safely beyond Fort Morgan, the fleet had yet to deal with the Ram Tennessee. At first the ram sought shelter under the guns of Fort Morgan; but just as the Union fleet was about to anchor, the ram was observed bearing down on the great - but wooden - ships of Farragut's. Farragut immediately ordered his captains to ram the Tennessee. This he regarded as his only defense, in the hope that the terrible enemy might be overwhelmed internally or struck by a mortal shot at close quarters. The ram was too slow to make her own efforts to ram effective.

A fatal defect in the building of the Tennessee had been the provision of grilled shutters for the guns; while her steering chains had been left exposed outside of the iron sheeting which otherwise protected her. In this her first battle, both of these defects proved immediately disastrous. The 16-inch shot from the Union ships could hardly dent her sides, but they did jam the gun shutters. One shot carried away the steering chains. Farragut's ships, equipped with iron prows, gave the Tennessee a heavy list while damaging themselves considerably in ramming.

The Tennessee, listing heavily, her smokestack shot away, her ~~xxx~~ steering chains gone, her Captain seriously wounded by a splinter, finally surrendered. Thus ended one of the most important engagements of modern times; and ~~x~~ when Farragut took his wooden ships into Mobile Bay, it was the last time in history that a great wooden fleet went into action.

The Fort Valley State College

Fort Valley, Georgia

June 3, 1942

20	5	May	5
(Bond H.M.)			
(Left book)			

Dear Mr. Wale: As you may know, I have been serving as a member of a Subcommittee on Education of a Joint Army and Navy Committee on Welfare and Recreation. Among other educational activities in the Armed Forces, being sponsored by this Committee has been the establishment of an Army Institute at the University of Wisconsin through which correspondence courses will be conducted. Among the people engaged in this activity is Colonel Francis T. Spalding, Head of the School of Education at Howard, and Dr. Francis J. Brown of the American Council on Education.

At my suggestion, the Army Institute will offer a course entitled, The Negro in Africa and America. Also, at my suggestion, I must modestly admit, the scholar chosen to write the textbook to be used in this course is to be myself.

I have in mind doing a "quickie" of short book length. I estimate that working at high pressure, and with the materials which I already have in hand, I can finish the manuscript in from a month to six weeks. Of course, I will need access to a good library, and I am thinking of going either to Nashville, Chicago, or New York, since our summer school is so well established, and we have such competent persons in charge thereof. I feel that my services during the last part of June and the first part of July can be well dispensed with, or I might come to Chicago just to get some good books to be borrowed for me by the Fund, and come back here to do the work.

I have not raised the question of expense with the committee. There will probably be some kind of Royalty provision which would amply repay me for the time to be spent, and even if I got nothing out of it, I think I would have jumped at the chance. I regard it as an unequalled opportunity, both to contribute to the morale of Negro Soldiers, and to place a proper perspective of the Negro before other members of the armed forces through educational channels.

The meat of the coconut is that if the Julius Rosenwald Fund wishes to be associated with this enterprise, I might wish to apply for a Grant-in-Aid of about \$300.00 to bear various items of the expense involved. It would be understood that this grant would be repaid out of Royalties, or whatever reimbursement was received.

You will understand that this letter is not an application, but one of information and to raise the question if an application would be in order. I should also like to ask if I came to Chicago if I could have office space and a typewriter at the Rosenwald Fund Offices to do the editorial work involved. Do you know a good graphic artist I could get to do some pictorial maps?

With best wishes, I am

Sincerely yours,

H. M. Bond
H. M. BOND,
President.

Copy to Mr. Embree.

The Fort Valley State College

Fort Valley, Georgia

(Bond, H.M.)
Textbook

OFFICE OF PRESIDENT

January 7, 1943

Miss Dorothy Elvidge
The Julius Rosenwald Fund
4901 Ellis Avenue
Chicago, Illinois.

	DE	1/11	DE	1/13

Dear Miss Elvidge:

Under date of July 1, 1942, you sent me a check for \$300.00 "to pay in full our offer of that amount toward the costs of writing a textbook on the Negro in Africa and America." You further stated, "When the project is completed, I shall need the customary certified statement of expenditures."

I regret that I have not written to you before regarding this grant and what happened as a result of it. The work itself was almost brought to the point of completion; however, there were numerous delays of which I knew, of course, but which I hesitated to take as final steps in the negotiations.

I am sending a full note of explanation to Mr. Embree together with a copy of the manuscript, as it stands now. I would appreciate it if you would check further with him on this matter.

In the meantime, I wish to certify the following expenses incurred; it may be that some of these included are not valid for the purpose of the grant, and for this reason I want you to inspect the list and inform me if some of these items should be deducted from the full account, and the amount due you by me increased.

EXPENDITURES UNDER GRANT OF \$300.00 FOR WRITING A BOOK ON THE NEGRO IN AFRICA AND THE NEW WORLD

Railroad Fare and Pullman

- Fort Valley to Chicago.....	\$30.82
- Chicago to Fort Valley.....	19.29
Total	\$50.11

Room Rent - Grand Hotel: Four Weeks

@ \$17.50.....	70.00
----------------	-------

Meals.....	50.75
------------	-------

Maps and Drawings: Paid to David Ross,

5400 S. Michigan St., Chicago.....	55.00
------------------------------------	-------

Telegrams, Telephone (Long distance, etc.)	7.53
--	------

Photostats, photographic copies (Paid to
University of Chicago Clinics)

18.25

Total expenses on project

\$251.64



The Fort Valley State College

Fort Valley, Georgia

OFFICE OF PRESIDENT

According to this reckoning, I owe you \$48.36. However, it may be that some of these charges are not valid, and that I owe you more; please write me so that I may send you a check in settlement.

With best wishes, I am,

Sincerely,

H. M. Bond
H. M. Bond

FISK
UNIVERSITY

certain that it would be adopted for use in camp libraries and, if such is the case, it would assure a publisher an immediate outlet of probably a thousand copies."

I must say that this made me very angry. Especially was this so when on the same day I received this polite "brush-off" I discovered that a representative from the Provost-Marshall's office had been in town investigating me to determine my fitness to write a book for the Army, on account of my political connections; and that among the questions that he asked, and that seemed to raise some doubt as to my loyalty, was my connection with the Southern Conference on Human Welfare.

As you may know, I am unfortunately at times given to too great sensitivity and bad temper at the wrong times and places. Among other things, I wrote to Mr. Brown telling him that I would pursue the matter no further; and I wrote to the people gathering the facts of my life, including a detail of my publications ad nauseam which must have irritated any good and sound Army man. Whether for this reason, or because what I had written was generally bad - I know it was bad, but what could one ask in so short a time and for so bogus a kind of publication? - I have heard no more of the matter.

I am sending you the incompleted manuscript. There were chapters to be added to include the military record of the Negro in the past and the present World's War. I send you also various maps and charts which were prepared.

It is bad, very bad, I know. It might be improved by re-writing. It might also be improved if written away from the idea of having an Army censor looking over your shoulder - I wrote it to be acceptable to anyone, but I see even that did not work.

Enough time has elapsed since I wrote the last page for me not to be quite as humiliated about it as before. I feel guilty about claiming any money for having participated in this kind of a job, and, if Miss Elvidge or you think the grant was poorly carried through - as I really feel - I would be happy to send back to her all of the original \$300.00 grant and get this flop off of my mind and conscience.

With best wishes, I am,

Sincerely,


H. M. Bond

Fort Valley State College
Bond H. M.
(Textbook)

January 13, 1943

Dear Bond: I am terribly sorry that the work you undertook so enthusiastically for the military people seems to have fallen on such stony ground. Of course we want to meet the costs within the terms of our grant. You have sacrificed a great deal more than we have and, as sometimes happens, both of us will have to write this off to profit and loss.

Your manuscript has arrived. While I haven't had a chance to read it, we will see that the material is carefully kept should you ever want to do any more with it.

Very truly yours,

ERE:JW

EDWIN R. EMBREE

Dr. H. M. Bond, President
Fort Valley State College
Fort Valley, Georgia

FISK
UNIVERSITY

CROSS REFERENCE RECORD

FIRM NAME OR SUBJECT	SUBJECT	FILE NO.
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div> <i>Jr.</i> <small>DATE</small> </div> <div> Vo.1/13/43 </div> </div>	FORT VALLEY STATE COLLEGE BOND, H. M. (TEXTBOOK)	
<small>REMARKS</small>	Charge on payment voucher #4884 for preparing a text book on the Negro in Africa and America transferred to Division of Race Relations-Special Studies.	

SEE	FINANCE (JOURNAL VOUCHER)	FILE NO.

DATE	SIGNED

FILE CROSS REFERENCE RECORD UNDER NAME OR SUBJECT LISTED AT TOP OF THIS SHEET, AND IN PROPER DATE ORDER.
 THE PAPERS REFERRED TO SHOULD BE FILED UNDER NAME OR SUBJECT LISTED UNDER "SEE"

YAWMAN AND ERBE MFG. CO.
 ROCHESTER, N. Y.



7 ✓ 88
1/21/43

January 14, 1943

Dear Mr. Bond: The expenditures which you
 have outlined in your letter
of January 7 made from the \$300 grant for a
textbook on the Negro in Africa and America are
acceptable to us. Your check for \$48.36, payable
to the Julius Rosenwald Fund, will close this
account.

Very truly yours,

DAB:AM

DOROTHY A. ELVIDGE

Mr. Horace Mann (Bond), President
Fort Valley State College
Fort Valley, Georgia

(Textbook)

refund \$48.36 rec'd 1/28
dep. 1/29

FISK
UNIVERSITY

CROSS REFERENCE RECORD

FIRM NAME OR SUBJECT	FILE NO.
FORT VALLEY STATE COLLEGE (BOND, HORACE MAN) TEXTBOOK	
DATE <i>jr</i> Vo.1/29/43	REMARKS
	Payments previously charged to division of race
	relations for textbook on the Negro in Africa and America
	transferred to developmental fund in race relations.

SEE	FINANCE (JOURNAL VOUCHERS)	FILE NO.

DATE	SIGNED

FILE CROSS REFERENCE RECORD UNDER NAME OR SUBJECT LISTED AT TOP OF THIS SHEET, AND IN PROPER DATE ORDER.
THE PAPERS REFERRED TO SHOULD BE FILED UNDER NAME OR SUBJECT LISTED UNDER "SEE"

YAWMAN AND ERBE MFG. CO.
ROCHESTER, N. Y.



Julius Rosenwald Fund

4901 Ellis Avenue
CHICAGO

Fort Valley
State College
(Bond, H. M.)
(Taylor)

From

Mr. Horace Mann Bond

Credit Voucher No. 3491

Date January 29, 1943

Refund of unused portion of grant of \$300 for writing a
textbook on the Negro in Africa and America - - - - - \$48.36

Accounts

Appropriation No.

Debit

Credit

Division of Race Relations - Special Studies 42-9

\$48.36

Prepared By

AM

Checked By

Posted By

FISK
UNIVERSITY

Comptroller

Fort Valley State
College
(Bond, H. M.)
Textbook

February 2, 1943

Dear Mr. Bond: This letter will acknowledge
 receipt of your check for
\$48.36 refunding the unused portion of the \$300
grant for the preparation of a textbook on the
Negro in Africa and America.

Very truly yours,

DOROTHY A. ELVIDGE

DAE:AM

Mr. Horace Mann Bond
Fort Valley State College
Fort Valley, Georgia

FISK
UNIVERSITY

CLASS OF SERVICE

This is a full-rate Telegram or Cablegram unless its deferred character is indicated by a suitable symbol above or preceding the address.

WESTERN UNION

(49)...

SYMBOLS

DL=Day Letter

NL=Night Letter

LC=Deferred Cable

NLT=Cable Night Letter

Ship Radiogram

A. N. WILLIAMS
PRESIDENTNEWCOMB CARLTON
CHAIRMAN OF THE BOARDJ. C. WILLEVER
FIRST VICE-PRESIDENT

The filing time shown in the date line on telegrams and day letters is STANDARD TIME at point of origin. Time of receipt is STANDARD TIME at point of destination.

QA5 1

Duplicate of Telephoned Telegram

1943 MAR 1 AM 9 57

LB134 54 NL=FTVALLEY GA FEB 28

SECTY OT E R EMBREE, THE JULIUS ROSENWALD FUND=

4901 ELLIS AVE CHGO=

I WOULD THANK YOU TO SEND MAPS AND CHARTS AND PHOTOGRAPHS WHICH GO WITH MANUSCRIPT RECENTLY MAILED MR EMBREE TO MAX BOND AT TUSKEGEE INSTITUTE BY AIR MAIL SPECIAL STOP HE FEELS HE MIGHT USE THE MANUSCRIPT IN SOME CAPACITY I AM SENDING HIM COPY OF MANUSCRIPT BUT HAVE NOT ORIGINAL CHARTS AND MAPS=

(H M) BOND.

(Textbook)

Fort Valley State College

OT PER OUR CY.

FANY WILL APPRECIATE SUGGESTIONS FROM ITS PATRONS CONCERNING ITS SERVICE

March 1, 1943

Dear Mr. Bond: As requested in your telegram,
I have sent Mr. J. Max Bond,
by air mail special delivery, the maps, charts,
and photographs, retaining your manuscript in
our files.

Sincerely yours,

JULIA WAXMAN

JW

Secretary to Mr. Embree

Mr. (H. M. Bond, President
Fort Valley State College
Fort Valley, Georgia

(Textbook)

Fort Valley
(Bond)
(Sept book)

APPROPRIATION

June 5, 1942

Dear Doctor Bond: We were very much interested here at the office in your letter of June 3 telling of the Army Institute at the University of Wisconsin and of the request that has been made to you to prepare some written material on the Negro in Africa and America. Our feeling is that the Joint Army and Navy Committee on Welfare and Recreation and such people as Colonel Spalding and Doctor Brown show unusually good sense in recruiting your services for such a project as this. We feel it an important, immediate thing to do.

We must comment in passing, however, that we hope it will not deflect too much from the long-range job, a job paramount in a post-war democracy, the preparation of the rural teacher. Fort Valley, along with a small group of other schools, is making real progress. Your leadership and willingness to concentrate all of Fort Valley's efforts in this direction are beginning to carry weight. You, your brother, Mr. Reddix, and Mr. Folger are working hard on one phase of this problem, the internship program. Continued efforts must be spent in this direction. None of the rural schools adjacent to our teachers colleges is yet good enough. A few of them are beginning to glow a little. In your case, you will agree, in spite of overwhelming odds, increased attempts must be made to bring Peach, Macon, and Greene counties into your sphere of influence. All of this is simply saying to you that we press you forward in the direction your recent letter indicates, at the same time urging that there be no sacrifice of the work in rural education.

To help you prepare some materials for the Army Institute, we are glad to respond to your request for

1-27-42
changed against
Publication

FISK
UNIVERSITY

\$300, and do so without strings attached. In other words, we expect no refund from you from any royalties that you may receive. Concerning a place to work this summer, I think it will be possible, should you come to the University of Chicago, to make some arrangements to use any service this office can render in the way of books, typewriter, desk. Will you let us know as soon as you can when and for how long you plan to be away from Fort Valley?

By this time you may have received a copy of Mr. Embree's latest book, American Negroes. This, as you will see, is a small handbook aimed at popular reading. It is my thought that when you have had a chance to read it, you will find that it will provide some answer to your problem of the preparation of materials, thus lessening the high pressure at which you will work this summer pulling together a "quickie". Certainly you will want to use it as supplementary reading if not for the actual basic "text" you plan to prepare.

Sincerely yours,

FRED G. WALE

FGW:RW

Dr. Horace Mann Bond
Fort Valley State College
Fort Valley, Georgia



Fort Valley

(Bond)

July 1, 1942

Dear Mr. Bond: The enclosed check for
\$300 has been issued to
pay in full our offer of that amount toward the
costs of writing a textbook on the Negro in
Africa and America. When the project is completed,
I shall need the customary certified statement of
expenditures.

Very truly yours,

DOROTHY A. ELVIDGE

DAE:AM

Mr. Horace Mann Bond
Grand Hotel
5046 South South Park Avenue
Chicago, Illinois

FISK
UNIVERSITY

7 up 86
9/20/42

Julius Rosenwald Fund

4901 Ellis Avenue
CHICAGO

To

Fort Valley St College
Mr. Horace Mann Bond

Grand Hotel
5046 South South Park Avenue
Chicago, Illinois

Payment Voucher No.

4884

Date

July 1, 1942

Payment in full of allocation toward the costs of preparing a

(textbook) on the Negro in Africa and America - - - - - \$300.00

Gk. #27194

*79 W said (10) 8/42
no accounting necessary*

Accounts

Publications

Appropriation No.

40-21

Debit

\$300.00

Credit

Prepared by

AM

Checked by

Posted by

FIISK
UNIVERSITY

Comptroller

The University of Chicago

University Clinics

PHOTOGRAPHIC DEPARTMENT
SURGERY 32

No. 952

Received of

A. M. Bond

\$18²⁵

Eighteen Dollars - 25 Dollars

for

Phota

Date

7-8-

194

2

Job No.

22930

PHOTOGRAPHIC DEPARTMENT

Per

J. S. S. S.

Cashier

UNIVERSITY

	ERE		EDZ	8
	15			

Remarks:

shall I write Bond that the
 expenditures as listed are
 O.K. ?

DE

yes
 EDZ

Fort Valley State College

Bond, H. M.
(Textbook)

Chapters I-V, IX, XII-XIV.